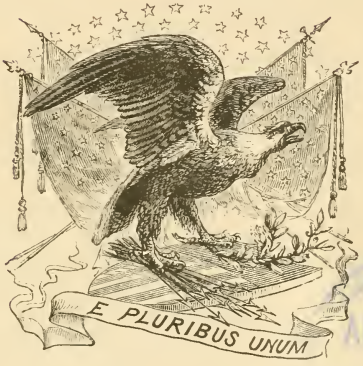
ELEMENTARY HISTORY

OF

THE UNITED STATES:

WITH NUMEROUS ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS.



BY

G. P. QUACKENBOS, LL. D.,

AUTHOR OF "ILLUSTRATED SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE U. S.," "AMERICAN HISTORY FOR SCHOOLS," ETC.

REVISED, IN 1884, BY JOHN D. QUACKENBOS, A.M., M.D.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
1, 3, AND 5 BOND STREET.
1884.

PREFACE.

First books, on any subject, should be simple and attractive. The beginner should never be discouraged by words that he does not understand, or sentences of great length and complicated structure. He should find his text-book interesting, and be won to study by the pleasant trains of thought it suggests and charms of style and story. He will otherwise be apt to conceive a dislike to the subject treated, and may feel the ill effects of a bad beginning throughout his whole subsequent course of study.

These principles have been kept in view during the preparation of the present volume. The author has here endeavored to present the history of our country so clearly that it may be studied with profit at an early age. Leading events are presented, but without any repulsive array of minute details, dates, or figures.

We all know the fondness of the young for stories; truthful anecdotes have therefore been interspersed throughout. To please the eye, as well as awaken thought, numerous engravings, designed with strict regard to historic truth, have been introduced. The form of a continuous narrative has been adopted as preferable for reading purposes, but questions bringing out the leading facts are presented at the bottom of each page, which may be used by the learner in preparing himself and by the teacher at recitation.

It is hoped that this book will be found comprehensive and thorough, as well as easy and interesting. Used independently, it is believed that it will give a fair and correct idea of our country's history; when a more extended course is desired, it may with advantage be followed by the author's "Illustrated School History of the United States".

New York, *August* 1, 1860.

In the present edition, the former text remains materially unaltered; the form of the book has been changed, new maps have been introduced, as well as instructive illustrations from the pencils of eminent designers, and the whole has been brought down to June, 1884.

CONTENTS.

ELEMENTARY HISTORY

OF THE UNITED STATES.

LESSON I.

FOUR HUNDRED YEARS AGO.

1. **The Earth** is round, like a ball. It contains two large divisions of land, called Continents. One lies in the east, and is called the Eastern Continent. The other lies in the west, and is called the Western Continent. These two continents are separated on one side by the broad Atlantic Ocean, and on the other by the Pacific, which is still broader. The map given above shows these continents and oceans.

2. **The United States,** in which we live, is part of

North America, and lies in the Western Continent. Europe, Asia, and Africa, form the Eastern Continent. Those who want to go from one continent to the other, have to sail many miles, across either the Atlantic or the Pacific.

3. Now, our gallant sailors think nothing of making such a voyage. But there was a time when even the bravest were afraid to venture far out upon the ocean. Their vessels were not so large or so well shaped as ours; and they feared, if they went too far away from land, they would never find the way back.

4. **Four hundred years ago,** men did not know so much about the Earth as they do now. They thought that it was flat, instead of round. They knew nothing of the Western Continent. They were afraid of the broad ocean. They supposed that those who kept sailing west would either reach the end of the Earth and fall off, or meet with dreadful gales and whirlpools. Some thought that the unknown waters to the west were filled with frightful monsters, and that it was wicked to try to sail there. So they left the Atlantic mostly unexplored. The farthest land that was known toward the west was the islands called the A-zores', about 800 miles west of Portugal.

5. Four hundred years ago, the land we inhabit looked very different from what it now does. There were no great cities in it then; no large farms, with fields of waving grain; no comfortable houses, with smoke curling up from their chimney-tops; no horses or cattle in the meadows; no fences, no bridges, no roads; no steamboats or sailing-vessels on the rivers; no white men, to give life to the whole.

6. In place of these, there were giant trees, thick woods, and rolling prairies. Deer, bears, and wolves,

abounded. There were fair streams, but no signs of life on them except the busy beaver. Here and there was a rude hut, covered with bark or skins; and dark, half-naked figures stole through the tangled brush-wood.

7. And what has so changed the appearance of the country?—Its discovery by Europeans. They found it a fruitful and pleasant land. They came over to it in great numbers. They cut down the woods, laid out farms, tilled the soil, and built villages and cities. They made the wilderness blossom like the rose.

8. But the Western Continent might have remained unknown to Europeans till this day, had it not been for the genius of one man. That great man, the discoverer of America, was Christopher Columbus.

LESSON II.

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

1. **Columbus** was born at Gen'o-a, in Italy, a country of Europe. His parents were poor, but had him well instructed. At an early age he went to sea, and visited various countries. On one occasion, the ship on which he served took fire, and he had to throw himself into the sea and swim for his life.

2. After making many voyages, Columbus became convinced that **the Earth was round,** and that by sailing west he would finally reach land. If you mark an orange, and place your finger on the opposite side, you will reach the mark whichever way you carry your finger round. So Columbus thought that by sailing west he would arrive at Asia, just as certainly as he would by

going east. He knew nothing of the Western Continent; but he supposed that Asia extended much farther east than it does, and he determined to try to reach it by launching out on the unexplored ocean.

3. **The Azores,** as we have said, were the most westerly land known at that day. Now, after a violent west wind, trees torn up by the roots were sometimes washed on these islands. The bodies of two men, very different in appearance from the people of Europe and Africa, had also been thrown there. These facts confirmed Columbus in his belief, and made him still more anxious to set out on a voyage of discovery.

4. But where was he to get the means? He was poor, and had no ships of his own. He could only lay his plans before the different powers of Europe, and implore their aid. First he tried his countrymen, the Genoese, but without success. Then he went to Portugal. The King of this country listened to his arguments; but, wishing to have the honor of the discovery all to himself, he basely deceived Columbus, and sent out a vessel on the proposed course under another commander. The expedition, however, failed, as it deserved to do.

5. Columbus next turned to Spain, which was then ruled by the famous Ferdinand and his wife Isabella. He had by this time become so poor that on his way to the court he had to beg for bread for himself and his little son. On his arrival, he found the King and Queen engaged in a great war with the Moors. They had no time to listen to a poor sailor whom every one laughed at. Still Columbus would not give up. Full of his great idea, he waited for a more favorable time, supporting himself by making maps and charts.

6. At last he obtained the ear of Ferdinand, and

pleaded his cause so earnestly that he almost convinced the King. But the long war had exhausted the royal treasury, and money was too scarce to be risked on an uncertainty. So Ferdinand resolved to take the advice of the wise men of his kingdom. Columbus appeared before them at Salamanca, to unfold his cherished plan.

7. **Before the Council.**—But the wise men of Spain could not believe that a poor sailor knew more than they did. How, they asked, could the Earth be round? If it were, then on the opposite side the rain would fall upward; trees would grow with their branches down; and every thing would be topsy-turvy. Objects on its surface would certainly fall off the opposite side; and, if a ship by sailing west got around there, it would never be able to climb up the side of the Earth and get back again. How could a ship sail up-hill?

8. Such was the reasoning of the wise men. By their advice, the King refused to furnish Columbus the ships he wanted. Who can describe his disappointment, after waiting so many years? There was yet one chance. Perhaps Queen Isabella would listen to him with more favor. He obtained an interview with her. Alas! she too was persuaded to refuse him.

9. Almost in despair, Columbus was on the point of quitting Spain forever, when a message from Isabella recalled him to court, with the glad tidings that the Queen had changed her mind. She had determined to fit out three vessels for the enterprise, even if she had to pledge her jewels to raise the necessary money.

LESSON III.

THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

1. **Spanish Ships.**—On the opposite page is a picture of three ships in the time of Columbus, with a portrait of the great discoverer himself. They look quite different from vessels of the present day. The hulls are much higher out of the water than those of modern ships, and not so sharp in front. The rigging, too, is different. You see a little round box near the top of the foremast. Here a sailor was stationed to keep a lookout; and in battle men were placed there to shoot those who appeared on the enemy's deck.

2. **First Voyage of Columbus.**—With three such ships, two of which had no decks, Columbus set out on his voyage of discovery. So dangerous was it considered, that he could hardly get sailors enough to man his vessels. At last ninety men were obtained, and with these he sailed from Palos [*pah'los*], a Spanish port, on the 3d of August, 1492. Columbus was now fifty-seven years old.

3. After stopping at the Canary Islands, to repair one of their vessels, Columbus and his men stood out boldly to the west on the great ocean. Day after day they kept on their course, with nothing in sight but the sky and the sea. The sailors looked out anxiously for land; but, as none appeared, they became terribly frightened, and wanted to turn back. This Columbus would not do. He set before them the glory they would gain if they succeeded, and the anger of Queen Isabella if they should return contrary to his wishes. But, as time wore on, they became more and more alarmed. They feared they would

never find the way home. They even talked of throwing Columbus overboard, and taking the ship back to Spain themselves.

4. At last Columbus had to promise that if land was not discovered within three days he would return. How anxiously he watched during

that time, and how high his heart beat with hope when signs of land actually appeared! The water grew shallower. Flocks of little birds came round the vessels. A

branch bearing fresh berries was found floating on the sea. A close watch was kept. Two hours after midnight, on the 12th of October, a joyful cry of "Land! land!" was heard from one of the vessels. It was echoed on the others. The sailors were now frantic with delight. They were ready to worship Columbus, whom a little while before they had talked of throwing into the sea.

5. When day dawned, the land was plainly seen. A pleasant land it was. There were gay flowers, and tall trees with leaves and fruit such as they had never seen before. On the shore were unclad copper-colored men, gazing in wonder at the Spanish ships. They took the ships for great birds, the white sails for their wings, and the Spaniards for superior beings brought down from Heaven on their backs.

6. Columbus and his men hastened to land. Kneeling, they kissed the earth, and returned thanks for their successful voyage. Then Columbus took possession of the country in the name of the King and Queen of Spain.

7. The land thus discovered was one of the Ba-ha'ma Islands, in the Atlantic Ocean, between North and South America. He named it San Sal'va-dor. Thinking that he was now in the East Indies, he called the natives INDIANS. All the islands of this region are still known as the West Indies.

8. **Discovery of Cuba.**—Columbus soon left San Salvador, to make further discoveries, in the course of which he touched at Cu'ba and Haiti [*ha'te*]. At the latter island he lost one of his ships, and left some of his men as a colony. After collecting specimens of the productions, and inducing several of the natives to embark with him, he set out to retrace his course to Spain.

9. On the return voyage, a terrific storm arose. Fearing shipwreck, Columbus wrote an account of his discoveries, and sealed it up in a cask, which he threw into the sea, hoping that if he and his men were lost it would be picked up and made known to the world. But it was not God's will that he should perish thus. His ships, though shattered, brought him safe to port. He landed amid the firing of cannon, and hastened to bear the news of his success to Ferdinand and Isabella. Thousands crowded around him on his journey to court. The streets and windows were lined with people, and the Indians he had brought with him were looked at with as much wonder as if they had come from the moon. With no less wonder did they gaze at the strange scenes about them.

10. Remember the date of the discovery of America—October 12, 1492.

LESSON IV.

LATER VOYAGES OF COLUMBUS.—CABOT.

1. **The news of Columbus's discovery** threw all Europe into excitement. Wonderful stories were told about the new land in the west. Many believed that gold grew on the trees, and that diamonds were as common there as stones in other countries. Those who had before laughed at Columbus, now thought that their fortunes would be made if they could only get to the land he had discovered. "To the west! To the west!" was the cry of every bold navigator that could fit out a vessel.

2. Columbus himself made three more voyages to the western world. On his third voyage, in 1498, he first

reached the mainland, near the mouth of the O-ri-no'co, in South America.

3. Meanwhile murmurs arose among those he had brought out, because they did not find gold so plenty as they had expected. The enemies of Columbus, too, spread false reports about him in Spain. Moved by these stories, and forgetting all he had done, the King and Queen unjustly deprived him of his command; and his successor went so far as to send him back to Spain in chains. This ingratitude cut Columbus to the heart. He carried his chains around with him wherever he went, and ordered that when he died they should be buried with him. Though he proved his innocence, he was never restored to his authority.

4. On his **fourth voyage,** Columbus, now an old man, was wrecked on the coast of Jamaica. He and his men were thus left at the mercy of the Indians. The Indians had at first been very friendly; but during the absence of Columbus the Spaniards had beaten them, forced them to work, and robbed them of their gold. Such treatment had awakened a thirst for vengeance. When Columbus was wrecked, therefore, they not only left him and his men to starve, but even threatened to attack them. At this crisis, Columbus saved his party by his knowledge of astronomy.

5. He knew that on a certain night an eclipse of the moon would take place. Collecting the natives around him shortly before the time, he told them tha the Great Spirit was angry because they would not aid the Spaniards, and that he would cover his face from them that very night. The moon gradually became dark; and the natives, believing that God was thus showing his displeasure, fell on their knees, promised Columbus abundant

supplies, and prayed that he would ask the Great Spirit to show his face once more. When the eclipse was over, they kept their word. With their help, Columbus succeeded in getting back to Haiti.

6. On his return to Spain, Columbus found that his friend, Queen Isabella, was dead. There was nobody now to do this great man honor. He died in 1506, poor and neglected. Even the continent that he discovered, was called after another.

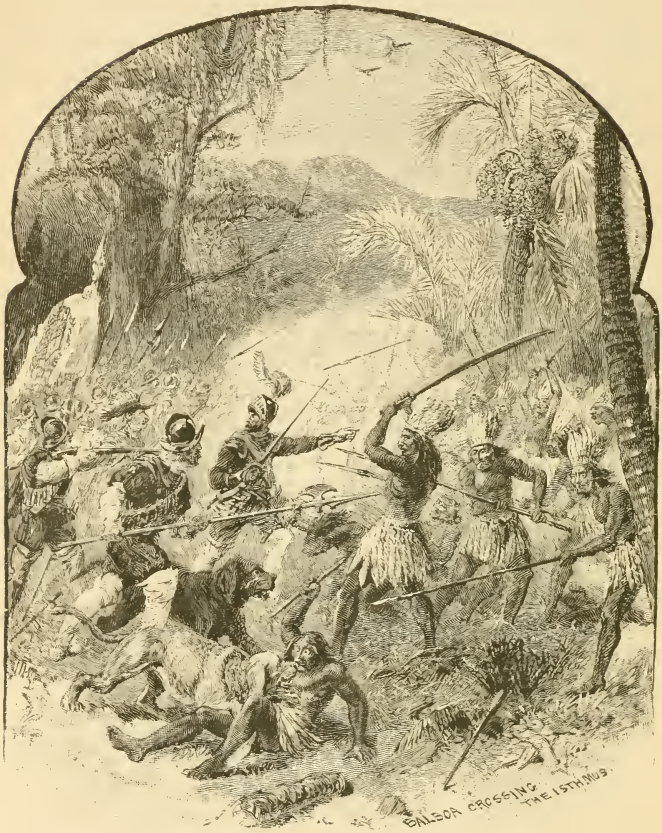
7. **Name of the New World.**—Among those who visited the new world shortly after its discovery, was an Italian named Amerigo Vespucci [*ah-ma-re'go ves-poot'she*]. After his return to Europe, he wrote an account of his voyage, containing a great many interesting but untrue stories. Among other things, he falsely claimed to have reached the mainland before Columbus. His book was read by many, and believed; and the new world, instead of being named COLUMBIA in honor of its real discoverer, was called after this Italian, AMERICA.

8. **The Cabots.**—The first navigator that reached North America was John Cab'ot, who was in the service of King Henry VII., of England. In 1497, about a year before Columbus reached the mainland, Cabot explored the coast of Newfoundland. He found a cold and barren shore, very different from the pleasant land that Columbus had described.

9. The first turkeys that were ever seen in Europe were taken over by Cabot on his return. His son Sebastian soon after made several voyages to the new world, and touched at different points of the coast as far south as North Carolina, taking possession of the country in behalf of the King of England.

LESSON V.

BALBOA.—MAGELLAN.—CORTEZ.



1. **The Pacific Ocean** was discovered in 1513, by Bal-bo'a, governor of a Spanish settlement on the Isth-

mus of Darien. Hearing of a vast body of water to the south, he raised about two hundred men, and with native guides set out to reach it. Balboa and his men wore heavy armor, and could hardly make their way through the pathless forests, and over rocks and mountains. A fierce tribe of Indians opposed their progress; but, defeating these with the aid of their fire-arms and blood-hounds, they pushed on. Many, however, had to stop by the way from sickness and fatigue; and with less than half of his party Balboa found himself ascending the peak from the top of which the guides said that the great water could be seen.

2. When near the top, Balboa ordered his men to halt, and climbed alone to the summit. There he saw the mighty Pacific rolling away as far as eye could reach. His first act was to thank God for the discovery. He afterward descended to the shore, and, with his sword in one hand and his country's flag in the other, wading out knee-deep into the water, took possession of it in the name of the King of Spain, and declared that he would defend it with his arms.

3. *Pacific* means *peaceful*. The ocean discovered by Balboa received this name on account of its freedom from storms compared with the Atlantic. It was so called by Ma-gel'lan, a Portuguese, who was the first to sail a ship on its waters. He entered it through a strait at the south of South America, since called from him the Strait of Magellan.

4. Magellan lost his life on this voyage. One of his ships, however, continued to sail west, rounded the Cape of Good Hope, and reached home after an absence of three years. This was the first vessel that ever sailed round the globe.—What did this voyage prove respecting the shape of the earth?

5. Next followed **the conquest of Mexico,** in 1519. Mexico was a vast empire. Its people were far more civilized than the natives in other parts of North America. They had laws and courts of justice, public schools, splendid temples, and large cities. They tilled the ground, worked their rich mines of gold and silver, and were acquainted with many of the arts and sciences. Their Emperor lived in a magnificent palace in the city of Mexico. He was waited on by six hundred nobles. His dishes and goblets were of gold. He called himself lord of the whole world, and made the neighboring tribes pay him tribute. The Mexicans did not worship the true God, but bowed down to idols of wood and stone. To these false gods they cruelly sacrificed the captives that they took in war.

6. The Spaniards, who were now quite numerous in Cuba and the neighboring islands, heard of this rich empire, and resolved to conquer it. They raised about six hundred men, and placed at their head a brave but cruel man named Cortez. Sixteen of the party had horses, and a few were armed with muskets. The rest carried swords, spears, and bows. With this small force and ten cannon, Cortez set out to conquer a great empire containing several millions of people.

7. As soon as the Mexican Emperor heard that the Spaniards had landed, he sent messengers to them with rich presents, but with orders that they should leave the country. Cortez received the presents, but paid no attention to the orders. Having sunk his ships, that his men might not think of returning, he pushed into the interior.

8. Before reaching the capital, several battles were fought with immense armies of natives; but the Spaniards were always successful. The poor natives were dis-

mayed by the muskets and cannon, breathing forth fire and mowing down their ranks. They were also frightened by Cortez' horsemen, whom they took for horrible monsters, half men and half beasts. Horses had never before been seen on the American continent.

MEXICAN NATIVES IN THE TIME OF CORTEZ.

9. After a great deal of hard fighting, in the course of which he was once driven out of the city with great loss, Cortez at last got possession of the capital, the Emperor, and the principal nobles. He treated his captives very cruelly. Gold was his great object; and he was wicked enough to stretch the poor Mexicans on beds of hot coals, to make them tell where they had hidden their treasures. He put a great many to death, and subdued the whole nation. From this time Mexico remained a Spanish province for about three hundred years.

LESSON VI.

FRENCH DISCOVERIES.—DE SOTO.

1. **Other countries** now began to send out ships to the new world, as well as Spain and England. In

1524, a navigator in the service of the King of France explored the coast from Carolina to Newfoundland. He called the whole region New France. Ten years afterward, a Frenchman named Cartier [*car-te-a'*] made several voyages to America. He entered the River St. Lawrence, and sailed up to a large Indian village, which stood where Montreal has since been built. The Indians were at first very friendly, but he made them enemies by carrying off their chief.

2. Shortly after this, a number of Frenchmen sailed to the new world, and settled on the St. Lawrence River. They found it so cold and uninviting, however, that after passing one winter there they were glad to return. Several other settlements were attempted by the French in the south, but without success.

3. **De Soto.**—Meanwhile the Spaniards, eager for gold, which they heard was plenty in the interior of the country, were constantly sending out exploring parties. One of the most famous of these was led by a governor of Cuba, named De So'to. He landed on the coast of Florida, with six hundred men in complete armor. De Soto took with him a blacksmith's forge, so that when his weapons wore out he could make new ones. That his men might not want for food, he drove a great number of hogs before him through the woods. Thus prepared, and well furnished with horses and supplies, De Soto and his party set out on their journey of discovery.

4. For many months they wandered to and fro, over what is now Alabama and Georgia. They met many Indians, who would have been friendly if the Spaniards had not, like Cortez, treated them cruelly. They were disappointed because they could not find any gold, and they wreaked their anger on the innocent natives. They

robbed them of whatever they wanted, and for the slightest cause burned their villages, cut off their hands, and gave them to their bloodhounds to tear in pieces.

5. Such treatment provoked the Indians, and at last a battle was fought. The Spaniards, with the aid of their fire-arms and horses, were victorious, and killed a great many of the natives. Some months afterward, the Spaniards having seized on the village of a tribe in the north of what is now Mississippi, the natives revenged themselves by setting fire to their own wigwams in the night. De Soto lost in the flames many horses and hogs, most of his baggage, and eleven of his men.

6. **Discovery of the Mississippi.**—Continuing his march, De Soto in a few days found himself on the bank of a mighty river now called the Mississippi. He was a proud man, and he would not go back unsuccessful. Hearing of gold in the northwest, he crossed the Mississippi and marched in that direction. Many weary miles he travelled. His Indian guides led him into thick woods and dangerous swamps. To get rid of him, the tribes he visited would tell him wonderful stories about some other country a little farther on, where gold was plenty. Thus he was kept marching about, only to find himself deceived and disappointed.

7. De Soto's men were now dying around him from exposure and fatigue. He saw that his hopes of wealth and glory were vain, and became disheartened. A fever seized him, and he died with little comfort in his last hours. His men wrapped his body in a cloak, and, taking it out in a boat, sunk it at dead of night in the great Mississippi which he had discovered.

8. After De Soto's death, his men continued their wanderings. They first tried to reach Mexico by land,

and made their way as far as the prairies of Texas. Then, ready to sink, they turned back to the Mississippi, and resolved to sail down to its mouth, and thence along the coast to some Spanish settlement. Every scrap of iron was used in making nails to hold their frail vessels together. After undergoing the severest hardships, about half of the party succeeded in reaching their countrymen. They had spent over four years in their weary wanderings.

LESSON VII.

THE AMERICAN INDIANS.

1. We have said a great deal about **the Indians;** it is time that we describe them. In the picture opposite are shown a number of Indians. The chief is tall and straight. Around his neck is a collar ornamented with the claws of bears that he has killed. At his back he carries his bow, and a quiver full of arrows; at his side, his tomahawk. He wears moccasins on his feet, and deer-skin leggings. His head is bare; he has no hair except a single scalp-lock, adorned with feathers.

2. There were many different tribes of Indians in different parts of America; but they looked alike, and led the same kind of life. They were all copper-colored, and hence have been called Red Men. Their hair was black, and very straight and coarse. In the north, they clothed themselves with skins; but in the south, where the climate was warmer, they wore little or no covering.

3. **Indian Life.**—The Indian spent most of his time in the chase. He obtained his food by hunting and fishing, and raised nothing except a little maize, or Indian

corn. This the women were obliged to plant and cultivate. The warrior thought it beneath him to labor,

and made his wife, or *squaw*, as he called her, do all the work. She put up their hut, prepared their food, crushed the dried maize in a stone mortar, and when

they moved from place to place even carried the baggage.

4. When the Indian was out hunting, or on the war-trail, he slept in the open air, with a fire burning beside him to frighten wild beasts away. At home he occupied a *wigwam*, or hut, such as is shown in the engraving. It was made by stretching bark or skins over poles stuck in the ground. Here you see the chief taking his ease, while his wife is cooking the dinner. The little chief is playing with his father's bow. The baby, or *papoose*, strapped up to keep him still, is hanging from a pole of the wigwam. An Indian woman often traveled miles with her papoose fastened in this way on her back. The wigwams of different tribes were usually built together in villages.

5. The Indians generally, though cautious and suspicious, were friendly and hospitable. They would set before a stranger the best they had, and were grieved if he would not eat. If any one did them a favor, they would remember it for years, and return it when it was in their power. An Indian has been known to save the life of a white man who had given him food or drink so long before as to have forgotten all about it. They remembered injuries also, and were unsparing in their revenge.

6. **Indian Warfare.**—The Indians were constantly engaged in wars with one another. Arrayed in their war-paint, they collected in small parties under distinguished chiefs. They carried neither baggage nor provisions. Each man depended on the game that he could shoot by the way.

7. Their object was to surprise their enemies, to kill as many as possible, and escape unhurt. They never fought on an open field. Their movements were made as secretly as possible. The chief led the way, and each

of the party trod noiselessly in his footsteps. To conceal their trail from the enemy, the last of the party would sometimes cover it with leaves. But it was hard to deceive an experienced foe in this way. The Indian could see and hear at a great distance, and observed little things that would escape the notice of a white man.

8. An enemy killed in battle was scalped at once. Without this, there was no glory in the victory. A distinguished chief could point to a dozen dried scalps hanging at his girdle or in his wigwam. All prisoners were either killed on the spot, or taken home in triumph. They were there sometimes adopted by the tribe in place of warriors that had fallen, but were more generally tortured.

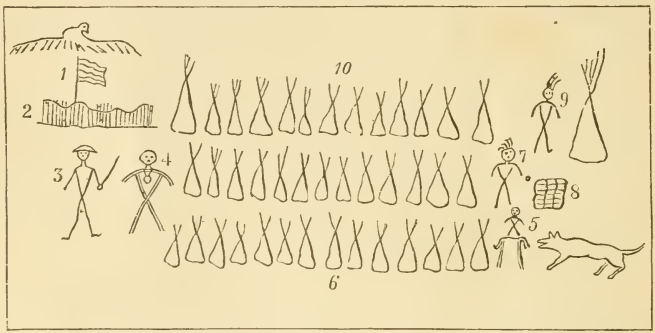
9. A common mode of dealing with prisoners was to make them "run the gantlet." Two long lines were formed, of men, women, and children, armed with clubs. The prisoner was placed at one end, and obliged to run to the other, unless before reaching it he sunk under the blows showered upon him as he passed.

10. They would sometimes fasten their captive to a tree, and fling tomahawks at his head, to see how near they could come, without striking him. At other times, they would tie their victim to a stake, and pile up burning branches and fagots around him. They would shoot blazing arrows into his flesh, and try to torment him in every way they could; while he, in spite of his sufferings, would neither flinch nor groan, but meet his fate bravely, singing his war-song, and boasting how many of their relatives he had slain.

11. When an Indian warrior died, his knife and tomahawk, bow and arrows, and sometimes his favorite dog, were buried with him. They thought that in the other

world he would need them, as he had done here. They buried the dead in different ways. Some erected a high platform, on which they placed the body in a kind of coffin. Others buried it in a sitting posture, or set it on the ground, and built over it a little house of bark. A mother would sometimes suspend the body of her dead child from the branch of a tree, and sing to it as it waved in the breeze. The graves of their fathers they defended with the greatest bravery.

12. The Indians believed that all men would live again after death: the bad, in a place of torment; but the good,



INDIAN PICTURE-WRITING.

This letter was fixed on a pole by a party of Sioux (*soo*), who, under the direction of a United States officer, had gone out to make a treaty with some Chippewa hunters, but were disappointed in finding them. The scroll was intended to let the Chippewas know that the Sioux had been searching for them, and was at once understood by the Chippewas, who came to the spot and read it shortly afterward.

1 represents the United States flag; 2, the cantonment of the troops; 3, the officer under whose auspices the expedition was made; 4, the leading Sioux chief; 5, the second chief, whose totem, or tribal symbol, was the black dog, in command of fourteen lodges (6); 7, a third chief, with thirteen lodges, and a bale of goods (8) devoted to the object of the peace; 9, a fourth chief, with thirteen lodges (10).

in the happy hunting-grounds, where deer, buffaloes, and all kinds of game abounded. They did not worship idols, like the Mexicans. They believed in a Great Spirit, and prayed to him for every thing they wanted.

13. **The Indian Languages** contained few words. As spoken, they were soft and musical. None of them were written, for letters were unknown. Facts, however, were recorded by pictures and symbols painted on birch-bark or prepared skins, sometimes chiselled on rocks. The copy of a bark letter on the opposite page will give an idea of Indian picture-writing.

LESSON VIII.

THE FIRST SETTLEMENTS.

1. **Founding of St. Augustine and Quebec.** —Though different parts of the country were explored, as we have seen, yet seventy years after the discovery of Columbus there was no settlement of white men within what is now the United States. The Spanish were the first to plant a permanent colony. In 1565, they founded St. Augustine [*aw'gus-teen*], in Florida. This place, still known by the same name, is the oldest settlement in the United States.

2. Forty years later, a French colony settled in Nova Scotia. Soon afterward, a Frenchman named Champlain planted a colony of his countrymen in Canada, on the spot where Quebec now stands. You remember there is a beautiful lake in the State of New York, called Champlain. It received its name from this Frenchman, who

discovered it while on an expedition against the Indians. The French at this time held the northern part of the continent, as the Spaniards did the southern.

3. **Raleigh and his Settlement.**—Between the possessions of the French and the Spanish was a large tract claimed by England. Sir Walter Raleigh, a favorite of Queen Elizabeth, undertook to colonize it. He sent out a party in two ships, which reached the coast of North Carolina. They found a rich and pleasant land, occupied by a friendly tribe. An Indian queen entertained them on Roanoke Island. Persuading two natives to accompany them, they returned to England, and gave so glowing an account of the country they had visited, that the Virgin Queen, Elizabeth, was delighted, and named it in honor of herself, VIRGINIA.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

4. Raleigh, thus encouraged, sent out a number of emigrants. They settled on the pleasant fields of Roanoke Island; but their governors were imprudent. One of them burned an Indian village, because a silver cup was stolen from his men. Another fell on a party of friendly Indians, thinking them to be enemies, and killed several before he found out his mistake. Such acts made the natives angry and revengeful. Some of the settlers became disheartened, and returned to England. The rest were killed.

5. Still Raleigh was not discouraged. He sent out more settlers to Roanoke, who laid out "the city of Raleigh." Their governor went back to England for supplies, and was absent two years. On his return to the island, there was not a white man to be seen. Whether they had been killed or carried off by the Indians, was never found out.

6. Sir Walter Raleigh's means were now spent, and he had to give up his attempts to colonize Virginia. Though he was afterward beheaded on a charge of treason, he is regarded as one of the greatest men of his day. The state of North Carolina has called its capital RALEIGH in his honor.

THE FIRST ENGLISH SETTLEMENTS.

7. Raleigh was the first to introduce potatoes into Europe. He planted some on his Irish estates. Others obtained seed from him, and now potatoes are the chief food of the poor in Ireland. He brought over from America another thing, which the people of Europe could have done without,—and that is, tobacco. He learned to smoke it from the Indians. One day his servant, who had never seen tobacco used, entering his master's room, found him sur-

rounded with smoke, and thinking he was on fire dashed a mug of ale over him.

8. **Jamestown.**—The first permanent English settlement was made in 1607, by a party under Captain Newport. They were sent out by a company to whom Virginia had been granted. Carried by a storm past Roanoke Island, where they meant to land, they entered a noble river, which they called after their King, THE JAMES. Some miles above its mouth, they chose a favorable spot, and laid out the city of Jamestown. This region belonged to Pow-ha-tan′, a famous Indian chief, the head of thirty tribes. Some of the Indians did not like the white men's settling here. But Powhatan said, "Let them alone. They hurt you not. They only take a little waste land."—Look at the map on the preceding page. How is Jamestown situated? In what direction is it from Roanoke Island?

9. Newport soon returned to England. Hardly was he gone when the settlers were attacked with sickness. At one time only ten were able to stand. In a few weeks but half the party were left alive, and they were seized with despair. They would no doubt all have perished, had they not at this crisis placed Captain John Smith at their head.

10. Smith was a brave and wise man. He soon had things in a better state. He made the idle work, and prevented the timid from sailing away, as they had intended to do. He explored the surrounding country, and kept in check the natives, who were becoming suspicious and unfriendly.

LESSON IX.

CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

1. **Captain Smith's** early life was full of adventures. Running away from home in his youth, he helped the Dutch fight for their freedom. But he soon became tired of this, and one dark night he deserted, and made his way to France. Then he went to Egypt. Wherever there was anything wonderful to see, he wandered.

2. On one of his voyages, he acted rudely toward some of his fellow-passengers, and they threw him overboard. He came near drowning; but saved himself by swimming to a rocky island, where he stayed until a passing vessel took him off. Next we find him in Hungary, fighting the Turks hand to hand, like the knights of old. At last, being wounded in a skirmish, he was taken prisoner and sold as a slave.

3. Smith was now carried off hundreds of miles into a dreary country. He was loaded with chains and treated harshly. So he resolved to escape. Seizing his chance, he rose against his oppressor, and, mounting a horse, fled through pathless forests to Russia. Hence, after some further adventures, he made his way back to England, in time to join Newport's party.

4. While out on one of his exploring expeditions in Virginia, Smith was suddenly attacked by Indians. He had ordered his men to stay by the boat while he went out to reconnoitre; but they wandered off, and were killed by the savages. After slaying three of his enemies, Smith, while trying to escape, sunk in a swamp and had to yield. Even then the Indians were afraid to touch him till he had thrown away his arms. He

would now have lost his life, if he had not understood the character of the Indians. Taking his compass out of his pocket, he showed them how the needle always points north, and told them about the shape of the earth and the heavenly bodies.

5. To increase the wonder of the savages, Smith told them that the next day they would find some articles that he named, in a certain place in the forest. He then wrote to his countrymen at Jamestown to put the articles there. They did so; and when the Indians, who did not understand his writing, saw every thing turn out as he had said, they began to look on him as more than man. They carried him around to their different villages in triumph, and at last brought him to their chief, Powhatan.

6. Here a solemn council was held, and it was determined that Smith should be put to death. An old history relates that his head was laid on a large stone, to receive the fatal blow. A fierce savage stood beside him, war-club in hand. Just as he was about to strike, Po-ca-hon'tas, a gentle Indian girl of twelve years, ran forward, threw her arms about the prisoner, and with tears besought the savages to spare his life. She was the daughter of Powhatan, and the favorite of the whole tribe. Smith had amused her during his captivity, by making her toys, and telling her about the wonders of nature. She had become fond of the stranger, and now tried to save him.

7. Moved by the tears of Pocahontas, the Indians spared Captain Smith. They even treated him kindly, and let him go back to Jamestown with promises of friendship. Pocahontas continued the firm friend of the English. She often visited them, bringing baskets of corn to relieve their wants. Once, when the Indians had formed

a plot to surprise and murder all the whites, she came through the woods by night at the risk of her own life, and warned them to be on their guard.

8. On his return to Jamestown, Smith found the colonists reduced to forty men, and these were on the point of leaving in despair. He made them remain, and soon after Newport arrived with fresh settlers and supplies. Some of the new comers were goldsmiths; and, seeing some glittering sand near the town, they fancied it must be gold dust. Newport was foolish enough to load his vessel with this worthless sand, and carry it to England.

LESSON X.

THE VIRGINIA COLONY.

1. **Chesapeake Bay explored.**—Smith could not remain idle. In 1608, he set out on a voyage of discovery in an open boat. He explored Chesapeake Bay, and several large rivers that flow into it. He traded with the Indians, and made a map of the whole region he visited. Soon after his return, Newport again arrived with more settlers. But they were not used to hard work. So they did the colony very little good.

2. Soon after this, Lord Delaware was appointed governor of Virginia, and nine vessels were sent out with supplies and men. Most of the ships arrived safely at Jamestown; but the one that contained the leaders of the party was wrecked, and it was months before they reached the colony. Meanwhile Smith had hard work to manage affairs. Those who had arrived last were idle and quarrelsome, and said he had no right to order them about.

3. **The Starving Time.**—There was danger, too, of starving. Powhatan, alarmed by the increasing numbers of the English, said he had no corn to spare, and would neither give nor sell them any. But Smith knew better than this. So, taking some large blue beads with him, he went to see Powhatan. Showing them as if by accident, he told the chief that in his country none but kings were allowed to wear such ornaments. When Powhatan heard this, he gladly gave several hundred bushels of corn for a few of the beads. Another time, he gave nearly a hundred bushels of corn for a little copper kettle. Do you think it was right for Smith to impose on the simple Indian in this way, even to save the lives of his countrymen?

4. In spite of all these difficulties, Captain Smith managed the colony well, till he was injured by an explosion of gunpowder. Then he had to return to England. No sooner was he gone than every thing went wrong. The colonists would not work any more, but called on the Indians to keep them supplied with corn. The Indians refused, and plotted together to destroy the whites. Several small parties were cut off. Some of the colonists seized a vessel and sailed away. The rest almost died of famine. Long was this period remembered as *the starving time.*

5. The arrival of Lord Delaware himself, with men and provisions, alone saved the colony. Under Delaware and his successors, Virginia flourished. Cattle and hogs were introduced from Europe. Tobacco was cultivated and exported to England. As coin was scarce, tobacco passed for money.

6. Thus far very few women had come over to America. In 1619, to make the colonists attached to their new

country, the London Company sent over ninety young women. These were soon married to the settlers, who gave a hundred pounds of tobacco apiece for the expense of bringing them over. The next year more were sent

MARRIAGE OF POCAHONTAS.

out. There was soon many a pleasant home on the fertile fields of Virginia.

7. **Marriage and Death of Pocahontas.**— Perhaps you would like to know what became of Pocahontas. This lovely Indian girl, when about eighteen years old, was betrayed into the hands of a party of Englishmen. They refused to give her up unless Powhatan

would ransom her. Instead of doing this, the old chief resolved on war. At this crisis, a young planter named Rolfe, who had fallen in love with the beautiful Indian, offered her his hand in marriage. She accepted it, gave up her former religion, and became a Christian. Powhatan approved of the marriage, and ever from that time remained faithful to the English.

8. Rolfe afterward took his wife to England. She was received with much kindness. Rooms were given her in the palace, and the noblest in the land flocked to see her. Among others came her old friend, Captain Smith, whose life she had saved. All admired her winning ways. But the climate of England was too cold for her. She was about returning to Virginia, when she died, leaving an only son. Several Virginia families trace their descent to this Indian princess.

9. Powhatan sent one of his warriors to England with Pocahontas, to see the country and find out how many people were there. When they reached England, this Indian got a long stick, thinking he would number the inhabitants by making a notch on it for every one he saw. He soon had to stop. On his return, Powhatan asked him many questions, and among the rest how many people he had seen in England. "Count the stars in the sky," he replied, "the leaves on the trees, or the sands on the shore, for such is the number of the English."

LESSON XI.

DUTCH SETTLEMENTS.—HENRY HUDSON.

1. **Discovery of the Hudson.**—The next settlement was made in what is now the state of New York, by the Dutch. This nation traded largely with the East Indies. They thought that the voyage thither would be much shortened, if a passage could be found from the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific, north of America. So they sent out a navigator named Henry Hudson, to discover "a northwest passage."

2. The chief river in New York, you remember, is the Hudson. It is so called from this same navigator, who discovered it. Striking the coast of Maine, Hudson sailed south as far as Virginia, without finding the passage he was in search of. Then turning back and closely examining the coast, he discovered an inlet between New Jersey and Long Island. He entered it, and soon found himself in what is now the noble harbor of New York.

3. The island on which the city of New York in part stands, is called **Manhattan.** This is an Indian word, meaning *the town on the island.* When Hudson's ship was coming up the bay, some Indians who were fishing saw it in the distance, and could not make out what it was. They called together their companions from far and near, and watched the strange object as it approached. Some thought it was a floating wigwam; others, that it was a big fish. At last they concluded that it was a huge canoe, containing the Manitou, or Good Spirit, who was about to visit them.

4. A great feast was prepared, and the chiefs engaged in a grand dance. At last the ship stopped, a boat was

lowered, and Henry Hudson, dressed in red, entered it with a number of his men. Now they were sure the Manitou was come, and formed a circle to receive him.

5. When Hudson reached the land, he saluted the natives, and then produced a bottle of liquor. After drinking a glass himself, he poured out another, and handed it to the nearest chief. Afraid to drink it, the Indian only smelled the liquor, and passed it to the next, who did the same. Thus the glass passed around the whole circle, and was about to be handed back untasted, when one of the chiefs, fearing that the Manitou would be angry, took it and said he would drink it, no matter what the consequences might be.

6. No sooner had he drained the glass than he began to stagger, and at last he fell to the ground. His friends thought he was dead; but he soon got up again, and declared he had never before felt so happy. They were all now eager to try the wonderful "fire-water," and it ended in all the natives' getting drunk.

7. The next day, Hudson distributed some beads, stockings, and axe-heads, among his new friends. They were delighted with these presents, but did not know how to use them. The next time the Dutch visited the spot, they saw that the Indians had turned the stockings into tobacco-pouches, and strung the heavy axe-heads around their necks as ornaments.

8. Hudson sailed up the river until it became so shallow that he could go no farther. One of his boats ascended beyond where Albany now stands. After holding friendly intercourse with several native tribes, he sailed down again to the mouth, and thence back to Europe, to give an account of his discoveries. The next year he made another voyage. Sailing farther

north, he discovered Hudson Bay, but lost his life in its icy waters.

9. **New Netherland.**—The Dutch followed up Hudson's discovery by sending out trading-vessels to the region he had visited. They obtained large quantities of beaver-skins and other furs from the Indians, in exchange for beads, knives, and hatchets. This was found so profitable that forts were built at different points to protect the traders. One of these was erected on Manhattan Island, in 1614. A few huts were put up around it, and the name of New Amsterdam was given to the settlement. Such was the origin of the great city of New York. The whole region was called by the Dutch NEW NETHERLAND.

10. The Dutch were a quiet, honest people. They loved to smoke their pipes, and talked no more than they could help. They paid the Indians for their land, though they made good bargains, and got it very cheap. The whole island of Manhattan, now worth millions upon millions, cost them only twenty-four dollars. Wherever money was to be made by traffic with the natives, they established posts; and their traders soon spread out on Long Island, Staten Island, and New Jersey. But it was not till 1621 that families came over to settle in New Netherland.

LESSON XII.

THE PILGRIM FATHERS.

1. **Settlement of New England.**—Captain John Smith, in one of his exploring voyages, visited the coast of what is now Maine and Massachusetts. To this north-

ern region he gave the name of NEW ENGLAND. It was first permanently settled in 1620, by a party from England, who are often spoken of as the Pilgrim Fathers; they belonged to a religious sect called Puritans, who were ill treated in England because they wished to worship God in their own way.

2. A number of Puritan families determined to emigrate to America, that they might enjoy their religion unmolested. One hundred persons embarked on a little vessel called the Mayflower. They meant to settle near the Hudson River; but a long and stormy voyage brought them to the dreary shore of Cape Cod, on the Massachusetts coast.

3. Parties were sent out to explore the coast. They found nothing but some Indian graves and a small heap of corn. The ground was covered with snow, and many took violent colds, from which they afterward died. A boat was then dispatched with some of the leading men, to sail along the coast and find a good place for landing.

4. Bitterly cold the little party found it. The spray froze on their coats, and made them as stiff and bright as if they had been of steel. Once, when they had landed, some Indians came near, and raising a terrible war-whoop discharged a volley of arrows at them; but the sound of the pilgrims' muskets soon put the savages to flight. Resuming their voyage, they were overtaken by a violent storm and almost wrecked. They found shelter, however, on an island. There was a good harbor in the mainland near by; and, as the country seemed to be more fertile than any they had before seen, they determined to land there, and send for their companions on the Mayflower.

5. **The landing of the Pilgrims** took place on the 21st of December, 1620. The day is still kept by the

people of New England. They gave the name of Plymouth to the place they founded. It is on the eastern coast of Massachusetts. Here you have a picture of the beautiful stone canopy now standing over Plymouth Rock.

6. The Pilgrims at once commenced building huts. But they had been exposed so much that many were taken ill. Six of their number died in December, and at one time almost every person in the settlement was stretched on a sick-bed. Yet they kept stout hearts, and put their trust in God.

7. The houses of the Pilgrims were built of rough logs. They had nothing but long grass with which to cover their roofs. One night in January, two of the party, Brown and Goodman, went out into the woods to gather some of this grass. On their return, they lost their way. Night was near at hand, and, to add to their trouble, a heavy snow-storm set in.

8. After trying in vain to find their way back, they sat down under the shelter of a large rock, and prepared to spend the night there. But before long the wind commenced howling among the branches, and in their fright they fancied it was the roaring of a lion. They knew not that there were no lions in America, and so they climbed a tree for safety. But there they were exposed to the cold wind, which pierced their clothes and made them shiver. Finding that they would freeze unless they kept in motion, they came down from the tree and walked round and round it as fast as they could till daylight.

9. Glad were the two wanderers when morning appeared. They lost no time in pursuing their way, and, after walking fast or running all day, they succeeded in reaching Plymouth in the evening. Their companions, having searched for them without success, had given them up for lost, and supposed that they had been killed or carried off by Indians. Long did Brown and Goodman remember the roaring of the lion and that freezing night in the woods.

LESSON XIII.

THE PLYMOUTH COLONY.

1. **The winter** was gloomy enough for the Pilgrims. They suffered much from hardship and sickness. By April half their number had died. But the weather now grew mild. Birds began to appear. The fields became green. The sick soon got better.

2. **Welcomed by the Natives.**—The country around Plymouth, though deserted when the Pilgrims settled there, showed signs of having been inhabited be-

fore. Smoke was seen afar off several times through the winter, and parties were sent out to find the Indians from whose fires it came, and open a friendly intercourse with them. They did not succeed; but early in the spring a single Indian entered the town. The settlers were surprised, as he approached, to hear him say, "Welcome, Englishmen!" He had learned a little English from previous voyagers.

3. The name of this Indian was Sam'o-set. He told the white men that he belonged to a tribe that lived about five days' journey off. That they were welcome to the land where they had settled, for there was no one else to claim it. That, several years before, the Indians who had lived there had been swept off by a pestilence. About this pestilence a curious story is told.

4. It seems that, a few years before the Pilgrims landed, a French ship went ashore on Cape Cod, and the Indians cruelly put to death nearly all on board of her. One of the Frenchmen, who was spared, remained some time with the Indians as a captive. One day he told them that the Great Spirit would punish them for having killed his countrymen, and would give their land to others. But they laughed at him, and asked whether he supposed that his Great Spirit could destroy so powerful a tribe as theirs. He replied that, if God wanted to destroy them, He would easily find a way. Soon after this a fatal disease broke out, which swept off nearly the whole tribe. The few that remained were killed by a hostile nation. This was the reason why the Pilgrims had seen so many graves, but no living Indians.

5. **Treaty with the Indians.**—The Pilgrims treated Samoset kindly, and soon after his chief, Mas-sa-soit', came to pay them a visit. They received Massasoit

with great respect. They presented him two knives and a copper chain, and gave his brother a pot of "strong water," and some biscuits and butter. A treaty was made, and Massasoit and his tribe always remained faithful friends of the white men.

6. Two of the Pilgrims soon afterward returned Massasoit's visit. They found the chief very sick, and his medicine-men trying to cure him with hideous noises and foolish dances. Turning them out of the wigwam, one of the Englishmen gave the chief some simple remedy, and restored him to health. He never forgot this kindness.

7. All the Indians, however, were not so friendly. A tribe that was at war with Massasoit, sent to the Pilgrims a bundle of arrows wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin. This was their way of declaring war. The Puritan governor sent back the skin filled with powder and balls. The Indians thought the bullets were charms, and were so frightened that they concluded to let the white men alone. The Pilgrims, however, expecting an attack, put up a row of stakes, or palisades, as they were called, around their settlement.

8. For some time the Pilgrims continued to suffer, especially from hunger. They could not raise enough to support them. There were fish in the bay, but they had no boats or nets with which to take them. Even two years after their arrival, they often went to bed at night without a bit of food for the morning. If a few of their old friends joined them, a lobster or a piece of fish, without any bread or anything else but a cup of water, was all they had to offer them.

9. But in three or four years things were better. Each settler had his own tract of land. They worked hard, and corn was raised in abundance. More of their

own faith came over from England. In 1630, their number had increased to three hundred. From this time, the colony flourished.

LESSON XIV.

OTHER NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN EASTERN MASSACHUSETTS.

1. **Massachusetts Bay.**—In 1630, a large company of English Puritans, having obtained a grant of land on Massachusetts Bay, northwest of Plymouth, came across and founded Cambridge, Boston, and other places. They formed what was called the Massachusetts Bay Colony. Though these settlers, like the rest, suffered much at first from cold and hunger, they soon began to prosper. Mills were built, and trade commenced with the other colonies. Boston is now, you remember, the capital of Massachusetts, and the largest city

in New England. On the preceding page is a map of the eastern part of Massachusetts. See if you can find Cape Cod—Plymouth—Boston—Salem.

2. **Rhode Island.**—The people of Salem had a young preacher named Roger Williams. His belief was somewhat different from that of the other Puritan ministers; but he claimed that he had a right to worship in his own way, and preach what he thought was the Bible truth. This, however, the people of Massachusetts Bay would not tolerate; and so they determined to send him back to England.

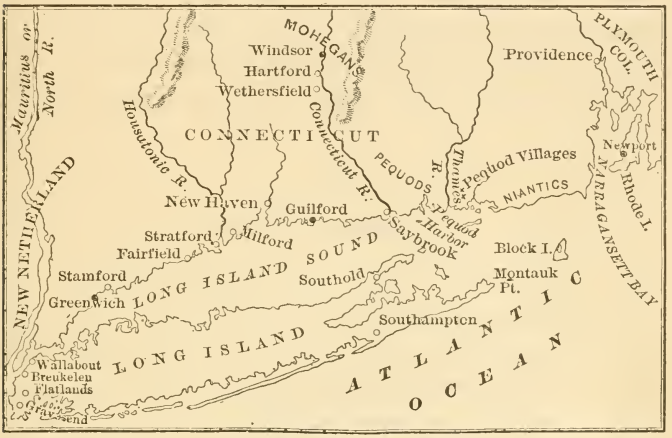
3. Hearing of their intentions, Roger Williams fled from Salem into the wilderness. He resolved to find some place where he could enjoy that freedom which the Puritans denied him. More than three months he wandered amid snow and rain, without either bread or bed. At last he reached some Indian wigwams, where he was kindly received. He bought of the Indians a tract on Narragansett Bay, and commenced a settlement. Grateful for God's mercy, he called this place Providence. Point out Providence, the first settlement in Rhode Island, on the map, page 47.

4. There is a beautiful island in Narragansett Bay, which the Indians called the Isle of Peace. Soon after Providence was founded, another party that had difficulties with the Puritans of Massachusetts Bay, bought this island of the Indians, and settled on it. They called it the Isle of Rhodes. Near its southern shore the city of Newport, now one of the capitals of Rhode Island, was founded.

5. **New Hampshire.**—Settlements were made in what is now the state of New Hampshire, as early as 1623. A number of trading and fishing posts were afterward es-

tablished there. These settlements, at their own request, were received into the Massachusetts Bay Colony. But, after about forty years, they were formed into a separate province by the King of Great Britain, under the name of New Hampshire.

6. **Connecticut.**—The Connecticut (or Long River, as the name means in the Indian language) was discovered by the Dutch of New Amsterdam. They built a fort where Hartford now stands, and opened a profitable trade



EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN CONNECTICUT.

with the Indians. But after a time the people of Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay heard of this long river, whose waters were filled with fish, and whose banks abounded in beaver and otter. One day in the year 1633, the traders at the Dutch fort were surprised to see a little vessel come sailing up the river. They wanted to keep this pleasant country to themselves. So, loading a cannon, they hailed the vessel, and told the captain to stop, or they would fire on him.

7. The little vessel belonged to Captain William Holmes. He had come from Plymouth to settle in the valley of the Connecticut, and brought with him the frame of a house to put up where he should land. He was not afraid of the Dutch or their cannon. So, since the wind was fair, he took no notice of their threats, but kept on his way. He passed the fort in safety, and settled a few miles higher up, at a place now called Windsor. Do you see it on the map?

8. It did not take long for reports concerning the fair valley of the Connecticut to reach England. A great lord obtained a grant of it, and a party of settlers was sent over. They built a fort at the mouth of the river, and called it Saybrook.

LESSON XV.

CONNECTICUT.—THE PEQUOD WAR.

1. **Emigrants from Massachusetts.**—Connecticut, as we learned in the last lesson, was first permanently settled at Windsor, by Captain Holmes. Two years afterward, a party from Massachusetts Bay determined to settle there. They went over land, driving their cattle before them, through woods that neither cattle nor white men had ever before traversed. But they started too late. The river was frozen before they arrived. Their cattle perished, and they suffered much through the winter from want of food.

2. The next summer, another party of about one hundred men, women, and children, set out from Boston for the valley of the Connecticut. They lived mostly on the milk of their cows, which they took with them. Moving

slowly along, they were nearly a fortnight in completing a journey which can now be made by railroad in three or four hours. They arrived safely, and founded Hartford and Wethersfield.—Find these places on the map, p. 47.

3. **War with the Pequods.**—Connecticut was inhabited by many powerful tribes of Indians. Among these were the Pequods, who lived in what is now the southeastern part of the state, near the mouth of the Thames [*tāmz*] River. When the Pequods saw the white men spreading over their pleasant hunting-grounds, they were filled with jealousy and alarm; and the whites, seeing how the Indians felt, distrusted them in turn. Up to this time, there had been peace between the whites and Indians; but this suspicion soon produced war.

4. One day, a trader, sailing off the coast, saw a boat which he knew belonged to one of the settlers named Oldham. It was full of Indians, and he suspected there was something wrong. So, although he had only two boys with him, he made for the boat. The Indians were frightened when they saw him, and as he approached they jumped over into the water. The trader went on board, and under a fishing-net he found Oldham's body, all mangled and bleeding.

5. The people of New England determined to punish the murderers. A body of men started for the Pequod villages. The Indians had fled, but there were their wigwams and cornfields. Setting fire to these, the settlers laid waste the country far and wide. This roused the Pequods to a bloody revenge. Dividing into small parties, they surrounded solitary houses, cut off travelers, shot down the men as they worked in the fields, and scalped women and children at their own firesides. They spared none.

6. Resolving to cut off all the English settlers, the Pequods tried to induce another tribe, the Narragansetts, to join them. When the people of Boston heard of this, they were greatly frightened. Knowing that Roger Williams, whom they had driven out shortly before, was much beloved by the Narragansetts, they sent to him, begging him to dissuade his friends from joining the Pequods. This good man, on receiving their message, set out alone in his canoe, in a violent storm, for the Narragansett village. He found the Pequod chiefs already there; but he pleaded so earnestly, that after wavering several days, the Narragansetts refused to join the Pequods, and declared themselves friends of the English.

7. The settlers now sent a body of men against the Pequods. Reaching one of their forts just before sunrise, they surprised its inmates, and set fire to their wigwams. They then formed a ring around the wigwams, and, as the flames drove the Indians out, shot them down without mercy. Six hundred Pequods perished in an hour. The next morning, the rest of the tribe, who had been at another fort, came in sight and renewed the battle. They fought bravely, but were defeated by the English. The few that survived were pursued from place to place, and the whole tribe was destroyed.

8. In 1638, the year after the Pequod War, **New Haven** was founded, as a distinct colony, by a company of Puritans from England. The new colonists adopted the Bible as their only rule of public action.

9. The New England colonies grew and flourished. In 1643, they contained over fifty villages. Threatened at this time by the Indians, and also by the Dutch and French, they thought it best to combine for their mutual protection in case of war. Accordingly, Plymouth, Mas-

sachusetts Bay, Connecticut, and New Haven, formed an alliance under the name of "The United Colonies of New England." This league lasted forty years, and was of great benefit to all.

LESSON XVI.

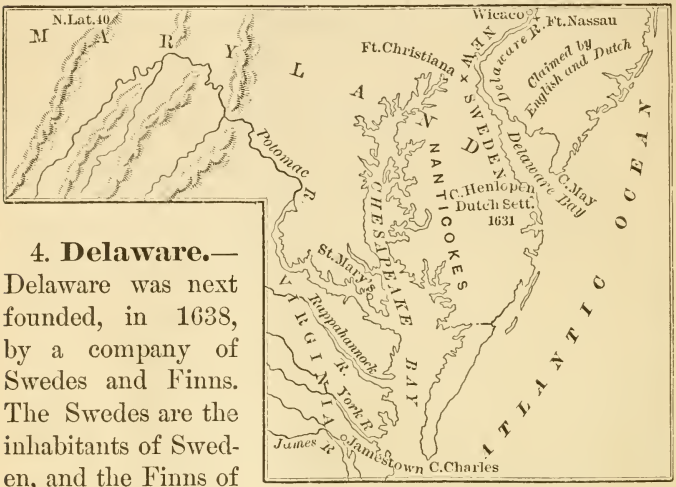
MARYLAND.—DELAWARE.—NEW JERSEY.

1. **Maryland.**—The next colony founded was Maryland. The region now so called was granted by the King of England to George Calvert, Lord Baltimore. Calvert desired to establish a colony where all might enjoy civil and religious freedom. His charter provided that the English government should not tax the colony or interfere with its affairs. The tract thus granted was called Maryland in honor of Henrietta Maria, the Queen of England.

2. Lord Baltimore died before he could plant his colony; but his son, Cecil Calvert, succeeded to the grant. In 1634, he sent over from England two hundred emigrants. They sailed up the Potomac River, which separates Maryland from Virginia, bought some land from the natives, and built a little village. They gave the Indians knives, hoes, and axes; and the Indian women in return taught them how to make corn-bread and johnny-cake.

3. The settlers of Maryland did not suffer, like those who founded the other colonies. They arrived at a favorable season, and were helped by the people of Virginia. They were free and happy, and numbers joined them from England. Their only trouble was caused by a man named Clayborne, who, before their arrival, had established a trading-post within their boundaries. He stirred

up several rebellions, but was at last put down. Baltimore, the largest city in Maryland, was named after the founder of this colony.



MARYLAND AND NEW SWEDEN.

4. **Delaware.**—Delaware was next founded, in 1638, by a company of Swedes and Finns. The Swedes are the inhabitants of Sweden, and the Finns of Finland,—two countries in the north of Europe. Though these nations had made no discoveries in the new world, they wanted to have a colony there, and fitted out a party of emigrants. Landing on the shore of Delaware Bay, the Swedes bought a tract from the Indians, and gave it the name of New Sweden. They erected several forts, and were soon joined by more of their countrymen.

5. Several years before the Swedes arrived, a party of Dutch from New Netherland had settled in this region. They had been cut off by the Indians; yet now, when the Dutch saw strangers taking possession, they claimed the country on the ground that they had been the first to occupy it. A quarrel thus arose, which resulted (in 1655)

in the conquest of New Sweden by the Dutch. The name was afterward changed to Delaware.

6. **Conquest of New Netherland by the English.**—The Dutch of New Netherland had gone on trading and prospering, though for a time they suffered much from a war with the Indians, provoked by the cruelty of one of their governors. Soon after this, Stuyvesant [*sti'-ve-sant*], a gallant old soldier who had lost a leg in the wars, became governor. It was under him that New Sweden was conquered.

Dutch Cottage in New York, in Early Colonial Times.

7. While Stuyvesant was governor, the King of England granted the whole tract occupied by the Dutch to his brother, the Duke of York. Of course it was not his

to grant, but he did not mind that. A powerful fleet was sent out to take possession. When the English arrived off New Amsterdam, they summoned Stuyvesant to surrender. But he boldly tore their letter to pieces, and, taking his station on the battery, prepared to fire on them as they approached.

8. Upon this, the people of New Amsterdam told Stuyvesant that if he fought the English he would have to do it alone. He had kept them down too much. So now they thought they would be just as well off under the English as they had ever been, and they refused to stand by their old governor. Brave as he was, therefore, he had to surrender. All the Dutch possessions, including what had been New Sweden, thus passed without the firing of a shot into the hands of the English.

9. This took place in 1664. The English were now masters of the whole Atlantic coast from Maine to Florida. In honor of the Duke of York, both the settlement of New Amsterdam and the whole colony of New Netherland, after their conquest by the English, were called New York.

10. **New Jersey.**—We have already seen that some of the Dutch traders had spread out west of the Hudson, and founded several villages. When the Duke of York gained possession of his grant, he gave this part of it to two of his friends, who called it New Jersey. They promised an unusual degree of freedom to all who would settle there, and the consequence was that New Jersey became rapidly peopled.

LESSON XVII.

KING PHILIP'S WAR.

1. **King Philip.**—For some years after the Pequod War, the New England colonies had no trouble with the Indians. But in 1675 King Philip's War broke out, which at first threatened to sweep off every white settler in Massachusetts. Philip was the son of Massasoit, who had been the friend of the English. He was the chief of the Wampa-no'ags, who lived in what is now the state of Rhode Island, east of Narragansett Bay. Find their country on the map, page 45. The Narragansetts, you will see, lived on the opposite side of the bay.

2. The whites had now spread out very much. The Indians, seeing what had once been their hunting-grounds covered with thriving villages, feared that they would be driven out altogether from the land of their fathers. So they prepared to defend themselves; and, when a friendly Indian revealed their plans to the people of Plymouth, they murdered him. Three of the Wampanoags were tried for this crime by the Puritans, found guilty, and hanged.

3. **Beginning of Hostilities.**—Philip knew the power of the English, and had tried to avoid war; but he could now restrain his followers no longer. Dividing into parties of twenty or thirty, they fell upon the frontier villages and farm-houses of Massachusetts, burned them to the ground, killed their occupants, and were off to the forest before any aid could arrive. Lying in ambush for the parties sent out against them, they cut off the flower of the settlements, and spread terror everywhere.

4. A few days after the war commenced, Captain Church with thirty-six men was attacked on the sea-shore by three hundred Indians. They took their posts behind some rocks, and defended themselves for six hours. At last, as night was setting in, their ammunition gave out. It would have fared badly with the bold Puritans, if a sloop had not just at this time come up and taken them off. Captain Church escaped, though a bullet passed through his hair.

5. Meanwhile Philip, who threw himself into the war with all his powers, had gone among the neighboring tribes, and persuaded them to join him. In a few months he found himself at the head of three thousand men. With these, when cold weather set in, he repaired to a large swamp in the country of his allies, the Narragansetts, and, building a fort, prepared to winter there. Now was the time for the English. A thousand men were sent in December against King Philip. They found the Indian fort on an island in the swamp. The only way to reach it was by crossing a tree which at one point had been thrown across the deep stagnant water.

6. **The Swamp Fight.**—Several times the English tried to get across, but were driven back with loss. At last they succeeded in entering the fort. It contained five hundred wigwams, which were soon in flames. The Indians, though they fought bravely, were totally defeated. Numbers of them were killed; but Philip and Ca-non'chet, the Narragansett chief, got away in safety. Hard indeed was the lot of those who escaped. Without shelter and almost without food, they were exposed to the fierce storms of a severe winter.

7. Three or four months after "the Swamp Fight," Canonchet was captured. Still he was as proud as ever.

When a young soldier asked him some questions, he replied, "Child, you do not understand war. Let your chief come; I will answer him." They offered him his life, if he would persuade the Indians to make peace; but he refused with scorn. He was then sentenced to be shot.

8. Philip, meanwhile, rested not, burning towns, and torturing his prisoners. His men, however, suffered much from hunger, sometimes having nothing to eat but the clams on the sea shore, which they had to go miles to obtain. Many of them now fell off, and others were killed or captured by Captain Church, who had taken the field. Among those made prisoners were the wife and son of Philip. This broke Philip's heart. Deserted by all but a few faithful followers, hunted down by the English, he could only die like an Indian warrior.

9. **King Philip's War ended.**—With his few remaining men, Philip now took refuge in a swamp near the head of Narragansett Bay. (See map, p. 45.) Here Captain Church surrounded him. A party of English, penetrating the swamp, reached the Indian camp at sunrise. In trying to escape, Philip approached a tree behind which an Englishman and an Indian deserter were stationed. The Englishman aimed at him, but the dew had wet his powder, and his gun missed fire. The Indian deserter then shot his former chief through the heart.

10. Thus perished this great chief, and with his fall the war ceased. Six hundred of the best men of New England had been slain; six hundred houses had been burned by the savages. The Indians had suffered still more. Two whole tribes were destroyed. For some years after this, New England enjoyed peace.

LESSON XVIII.

VIRGINIA.—INDIAN TROUBLES.—BACON'S REBELLION.

1. We must now return to **Virginia.** When Powhatan died, his brother succeeded him. He soon became an enemy to the English,—and not without reason; for some of the settlers treated the Indians very ill, driving them from their own wigwams and robbing them of their corn. The Indians resolved on vengeance. They pretended to be fonder than ever of the English, and brought them presents of game. But all at once, on an appointed day, they fell on every settlement in the colony with war-whoop and tomahawk.

2. The night before, a friendly Indian had disclosed the plot to the people of Jamestown, and here the savages were driven back; but everywhere else they were successful. The settlers were taken off their guard; their houses and barns were burned. A bloody war thus arose. No one could till the fields. Food became scarce; and, though the Indians were at last put down, it was long before the colony recovered from the effects of the massacre.

3. In 1644, the same crafty chief, the brother of Powhatan, got up another plot among his people for murdering the Virginians. He was now over a hundred years old, but as cunning as ever. He laid his plans so well that the settlers were surprised, and several hundred killed. A party, however, was sent out against the Indians, and the old chief himself was captured. He was brought a prisoner to Jamestown, and there cruelly shot by the sentinel who was guarding him.

4. At this time **Berkeley** was governor of Virginia. At first he was much liked; but, when the people found that he kept them down and taxed them to enrich himself, they turned against him. One of the chief things they complained of, was that he would not take measures to protect them from the natives. He made money by selling licences to trade with the Indians, and was unwilling to provoke a war, for that would interfere with his profits.

5. **Bacon's Rebellion.**—About thirty years after the fall of Powhatan's brother, as related above, the Indians again became troublesome. Again they had been provoked by cruelty on the part of the whites. In vain the people begged Governor Berkeley to send out a force to protect the frontier. There was at this time in the colony a brave and talented young man named Bacon, who had lately come over from England. Urged by his friends, and hearing of several murders committed by the Indians on his own plantation, he raised a body of men, pursued the savages, and defeated them.

6. Bacon did this without the governor's permission, and Berkeley, choosing to regard the act as treason, raised a force and marched against him. A great part of the year 1676 was spent in a struggle between Bacon and the governor. At last Bacon obtained a decided advantage. Berkeley was driven from Jamestown; and, to prevent it from falling again into his hands, it was burned to the ground.

7. In the midst of his success, Bacon died. Berkeley at once resumed the chief power. Those who had taken part in "Bacon's Rebellion," as it was called, were persecuted without mercy. Over twenty persons were

put to death. The people were oppressed more than ever, and rejoiced when at last the tyrant sailed for

England. There he was treated with the contempt he deserved, and he soon died of mortification.

8. The people of Virginia did not gain much by a

change of governors. For some years they were ruled by men who tried to extort from them all they could. They struggled bravely for their rights, but for a time without success.

9. Jamestown was never rebuilt. There were, at this time, no other towns in Virginia; for the colony was divided into large plantations, on which corn and tobacco were raised. Journeys were made in boats or on horseback. The roads were mere bridle-paths through the forests. When the traveller came to a stream, he had to swim his horse over it, for there were neither ferries nor bridges. The houses were mostly of logs, and one story high. The windows were closed with shutters, for want of glass. There were no newspapers, and few if any schools. How things have changed within two hundred years!

10. In the engraving you see illustrated old English life in Jamestown and life in an Indian village of Virginia. Look at the odd costumes of the English men and women, so different from ours; the low houses; and the great round masses of tobacco, with sticks of wood thrust through them, dragged about the streets like huge rollers. The Indian village is protected by palisades from the sudden attack of an enemy; the dwellings are of frame-work, designed to be covered with mats which can be raised and lowered at pleasure; maize and tobacco are grown; in the little thatched cottage, erected in the corn-field, sits a watcher to frighten off the birds with his cries.

LESSON XIX.

CAROLINA.—PENNSYLVANIA.

1. **North Carolina.**—In 1653, some planters from Virginia, invited by the fine soil and pleasant climate, moved toward the south, and settled in what is now North Carolina. Ten years afterward, the King of England granted the country from Virginia to Florida to several of his favorites. They drew up a plan for a great empire. A few lords were to have all the power, while the people were to do the work. This did not suit the free and hardy settlers. They insisted on their rights, and the great lords had to yield.

2. **South Carolina.**—The first settlement in South Carolina was made in 1670 by emigrants from England. In 1672, Charleston, now the largest city in the state, was founded. The country was so delightful that emigrants were attracted to it in great numbers from Scotland, Ireland, and France. The plan that had been drawn up for exalting a few lords at the expense of the people, would not answer here any more than in North Carolina, and was soon laid aside.

3. For a time the people of both North and South Carolina had some trouble with their governors. These governors, for the most part, neither knew nor cared what was for the good of the colonists, but tried to extort from them all the money they could. The people, however, would not submit. After a long struggle, they succeeded in establishing their rights. Both colonies were then happy and prosperous.

4. Rice and cotton are now among the chief productions of South Carolina. Rice came from some seed

which was brought from Madagascar, an island on the coast of Africa. Cotton was raised near Jamestown, soon after it was founded; but the tobacco crop proved to be more profitable, and it was not till about 1700 that much attention was paid to cotton.

5. **Pennsylvania.**—The Swedes who settled Delaware spread out toward the north, and had some thriving plantations within the limits of what is now called Pennsylvania. They were conquered by the Dutch, you remember; and the Dutch, in turn, yielded to the English. After remaining for a time under the government of New York, the region west of the Delaware was transferred to William Penn, and called Pennsylvania.

6. **William Penn** was a quaker. The Quakers were a pure, good people,—but in some things peculiar. They wore broad-brimmed hats, which they would not take off before lord, or judge, or even the King himself. They called no man *Mister*. They would not address the King as *Your Majesty*, but called him *Friend Charles* or *Friend James*, as the case might be. They thought war was wrong, and wished to live in peace and love with all men.

7. The Quakers were cruelly persecuted in England. William Penn himself had been thrown into prison, and suffered much on account of his opinions. He thought it would be a great thing to establish a colony where the Quakers could be free and happy. Now, the King had owed his father, who was a famous admiral, a large sum of money; and Penn, in payment of the debt, obtained a grant of land in the new world, as mentioned above.

8. Penn, with a large company of Quakers, reached the shore of America in 1682. The next year, he laid out on the Delaware the fine city of Philadelphia, now

the second in size in the Union. Penn treated all men honestly. He bought his land of the Swedes and Indians. Calling the Indians together under a great elm, he made them presents, assured them of his love, and asked their friendship in return. The Red Men met him kindly. They promised to live in peace with him and his children as long as sun and moon should endure.

9. The Indians kept their word. For seventy years, Pennsylvania had no trouble with the natives. The people enjoyed a free government, and numbers flocked there from other parts of the new world and from Europe. In three years Philadelphia grew more than New York had done in fifty years. But Penn did not profit by its prosperity. He was unjustly deprived of his rights in the colony, and died in poverty.

LESSON XX.

INDIAN MISSIONS.—FRENCH EXPLORERS.

1. **Puritan Life.**—The Puritans were moral and industrious, but stern and formal. They cropped their hair close to their heads, and were opposed to wigs and veils. They thought it wicked for women to wear lace, silk hoods, or flowing sleeves. They observed the Sabbath strictly, and commenced it on Saturday evening. They liked very long prayers and sermons, and punished those who stayed away from church. With the help of the picture, you may look into the parlor and kitchen of a well-to-do New England family of this time. The houses were comfortably furnished. The windows were glazed with small panes, and the sills low enough to form pleas-

ant seats. About the walls hung portraits or prints, and from the low ceiling was often suspended an ostrich egg. A quaint side-board with its cut glass and old silver; straight-backed chairs; four-post bedsteads, draped with curtains; high-backed settles, to keep off the wind whistling through the crannies; open fire-places, with andirons, shovel, tongs, and bellows,—were the style. Describe what is shown in the kitchen, used also as the family sitting-room.

2. The Puritans had fled from England to escape

persecution. Yet, when they got the power in the new world, they persecuted others. The colony of Massachusetts Bay, you remember, drove out Roger Williams. They treated Quakers still worse, fining and whipping such as were found within the limits of the colony. At last, they even put several Quakers to death. How could they think that such cruelty was pleasing to God?

3. **Missions among the Indians.**—Toward the Indians the Puritans showed a better spirit. John Eliot and other good men went among them, and tried to make them Christians. Eliot translated the Bible into their language, and opened a school for Indian youth. He taught the women to spin, and the men to dig. His kindness won their hearts, and many of the natives in Eastern Massachusetts received the truths he taught.

4. The Puritans were not alone in trying to convert the Indians. We learned that the French at an early date explored the St. Lawrence River. In 1608, they founded Quebec on its left bank. The trade in furs with the Indians was found profitable, and various French settlements were made in different parts of what is now called Canada. With the traders came out a number of Roman Catholic priests and Jesuits, who travelled far out in the northwest and preached to the Indians.

5. Several little forts were built by these French priests in what is now the states of Michigan and Illinois. It was then, of course, a wilderness. Torture and death were often the reward of the devoted missionaries. Even after having once suffered much and escaped, they would go back to preach to the same savages that had ill-treated them.

6. This was the case with Father Jogues [*zhōg*]. The Dutch redeemed him from the Mohawks, after he had

been nearly tortured to death. He found his way back to Canada; but shortly after, when a missionary was to be sent to these same Mohawks, he offered himself for the work, and went, saying, "I shall never return." His words were fulfilled. Soon after his arrival, the savages declared he had blighted their crop, and put him to death.

7. **Marquette** [*mar-ket'*] and **Joliet** [*zhole-ya'*], two devoted French missionaries, in the course of their wanderings, discovered the upper part of the Mississippi, as De Soto had the lower part more than a hundred years before. They sailed some distance down the great river. The Indians along its banks were friendly, and feasted them with hominy and fish. Marquette afterward undertook another expedition. He landed to say his prayers on the bank of a stream in Michigan, and died there while engaged in his devotions.

8. The greatest of these French explorers was **La Salle** [*lah sal*]. He set out for the west in the first sailboat that ever crossed Lake Ontario. He met with many adventures, built forts, traded with the Indians, and went where white men had never been before. Part of his company discovered the Falls of Saint Anthony in the Mississippi. In 1682, he sailed down the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico, and called the country Louisiana, after Louis XIV., King of France.

9. La Salle then went to France, to obtain the means of founding a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. He was intrusted with several ships, and a large amount of stores. But his store-ship was wrecked on the coast of what is now called Texas. He could not find the mouth of the great river. Leaving some of his men to settle in Texas, he set out with the rest, to find his way across the continent to Canada.

10. La Salle had not gone far when he was killed by one of his company. The murderer himself soon after perished, and few of the party succeeded in reaching Canada. Though La Salle failed to plant a permanent colony, his expedition gave the French King a claim to the whole valley of the Mississippi.

LESSON XXI.

KING WILLIAM'S WAR.

1. **The French** now possessed many posts in Canada and the far west, and had great influence with some of the native tribes. The English settlements were still more numerous, and stronger. So it is not strange that the two parties were jealous of each other. In 1689, troubles arose between the Kings of France and England, and hostilities at once commenced in the new world. As William III. now held the crown of England, this was called **King William's War.**

2. The first thing the French did, was to excite their Indian allies against the English. There was an old man called Major Waldron, living in Dover, New Hampshire, who had once treated the natives cruelly, and to whom some of them were in debt for goods. About dark one night, a couple of squaws knocked at his door, and asked to stay there all night, as they were very tired. Major Waldron told them that they might; but, as soon as the family were asleep, they opened the door and let in a band of Indians.

3. They set the old man on a table. He had been a magistrate; and, mocking him, they cried out, "Judge

Indians now as you used to do." Then the cruel savages who owed him money, drew their knives across his breast, saying that thus they crossed out their accounts. After killing Major Waldron, they attacked the neighboring houses, putting to death all whom they could.

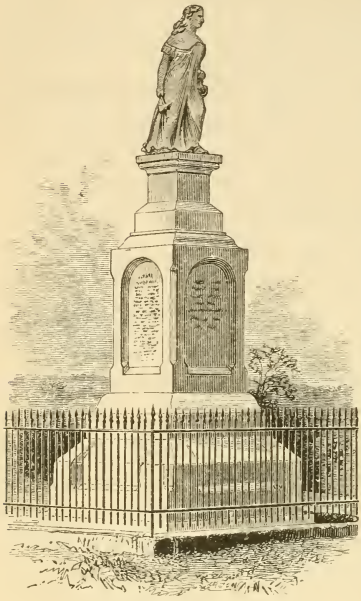
4. The following winter, a body of French and Indians surprised Sche-nec'ta-day. This was a flourishing village, sixteen miles from Albany. There was a wall of palisades around it, but the sentinel had gone to sleep, and the assailants entered through the gate. The inhabitants were roused by the terrible war-whoop and the crackling flames of their houses. Some were killed in their beds. Others fled into the wilderness in their night-clothes. The rest were driven off as captives, and the town was reduced to ruins. Other places on the frontier suffered in the same way.

5. These outrages at last roused the English. They sent two expeditions against the French at Montreal and Quebec. One was beaten back, and the other returned without effecting anything. Throughout this war, which lasted eight years, the French and their Indian allies had the better of the English.

6. **Hannah Dustin.**—Mrs. Dustin showed a daring spirit. She was lying sick, with a young babe beside her, when a band of Indians fell upon the house. They killed the poor infant, and made her get up, sick as she was, and go with them. Mr. Dustin was working in a field near by. He could not help her; but telling his children to run for the woods, he saved them with difficulty by keeping the Indians off with his gun.

7. Mrs. Dustin, her nurse, and a boy, were driven off many miles to the north. Threatened every day with death, they at last resolved to risk their lives in an effort

to escape. The boy told his master that he wanted to become a great warrior, and asked where he should strike a person in order to kill him. The savage showed him, and he told Mrs. Dustin and the nurse. That same night, the three softly arose. They struck the sleeping Indians in the way the boy had been shown, and killed the whole party that had captured them. Then they seized on a canoe, paddled down the river, and were soon among their friends, who had given them up as lost. A granite monument erected on the spot, near Fisherville, N. H., commemorates this deed.



The Hannah Dustin Monument.

LESSON XXII.

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.—THE SOUTHWEST.—GEORGIA FOUNDED.

1. In 1702, another war broke out, between the French and Spanish and the English. It was called, from the Queen of England, **Queen Anne's War.** In the new world, hostilities began in the southwest. The gov-

ernor of South Carolina marched against the Spaniards at St. Augustine, Florida. Before he could take the castle, two Spanish vessels appeared off the coast, and he had to leave his stores and run away. He afterward set out against the Indian allies of the French and Spanish, and succeeded in burning several of their villages and taking a number of prisoners.

2. The French and Spanish in return made an attack on Charleston. (See map, p. 73.) They were bravely met by the inhabitants, who drove them back, and took a French frigate in the harbor. Though thus successful, the planters of Carolina suffered much for several years from the incursions of the savages, who were excited against them by the French and Spanish.

3. **Deerfield Burned.**—In the winter of 1704, some French and Indians from Canada made a descent on Deerfield, in the northern part of Massachusetts. They were expected, and sentinels were posted every night. But the cunning Frenchman kept his men in the woods till daybreak, when the guard was dismissed. Then climbing up the snow, which was piled to the top of the palisades, they were in the town in a moment.

4. Every house in Deerfield was burned but one, and that was riddled with bullets. Many were killed, and still more made prisoners. Among the latter were Mr. Williams, the minister of the place, his wife and five children. They were driven many miles through the snow; and at last Mrs. Williams, who was sick, sank from exhaustion, and was killed before her husband's eyes. After remaining a prisoner many months, Mr. Williams was ransomed, and returned to his friends, with all his children but a daughter seven years old.

5. Years rolled on, and Deerfield was rebuilt. One

day, a woman dressed like a squaw entered the town. Her face was unlike an Indian's, and the people asked her who she was. She answered that she was the lost daughter of Mr. Williams; that she was married to an Indian, and had several children in Canada. The people begged her to stay with them; but she would not leave her husband and children, and went back to Canada.

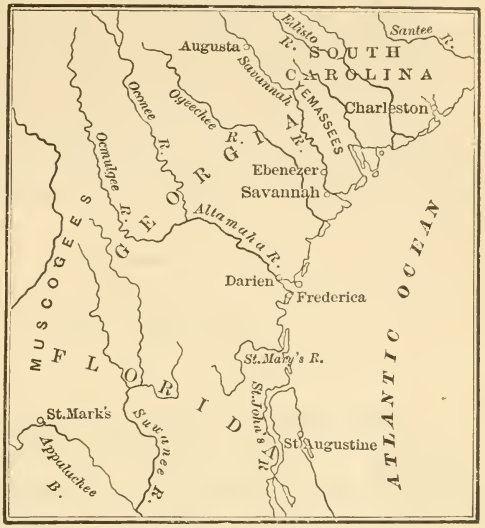
New Orleans and Vicinity.

6. **French Settlement in the Southwest.**—The King of France was not discouraged by La Salle's ill success. He sent out more emigrants, who found the mouth of the Mississippi, sailed up the river, and built Fort Rosalie where Natchez now stands. In 1718, the city of New Orleans was laid out. At first it grew but slowly, but now it is the great city of the southwest.

7. The colonists of Louisiana, as this whole region was then called, soon got into trouble with the natives. The Natchez Indians had a village near the French fort, which the French wanted to seize and turn into a plantation. This roused the Natchez, who fell on the fort and put to death all except the women and children. The people of New Orleans avenged this massacre by destroying the whole tribe.

8. The last settled of the colonies was **Georgia.** In

1733, Oglethorpe [*o'gel-thorp*], having obtained a grant from George II., King of Great Britain, in whose honor he named his colony, reached the Savannah River with a company of emigrants. The beautiful city of Savannah was founded, with wide and regular streets, and large gardens around the houses. More emigrants came over, and through the wise management of Oglethorpe the colony flourished.



EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN GEORGIA AND FLORIDA.

9. Oglethorpe treated the Indians kindly, and they met him in the same spirit. Soon after his arrival, several chiefs came to welcome him. They brought him a buffalo-skin, adorned with the head and feathers of an eagle, in token of their friendship, and asked him to love and protect their families.

10. We have now had an account of the founding of the thirteen colonies. See if you can remember them in order, with the date of each.

1. Virginia, by the English, at Jamestown, in 1607.
2. New York, by the Dutch, at New Amsterdam, in 1614.
3. New Jersey, by Dutch traders, at Bergen, in 1618.

4. Massachusetts, by English Puritans, at Plymouth, in 1620.
5. New Hampshire, by the English, at Dover and Portsmouth, in 1623.
6. Maryland, by the English, under Lord Baltimore, in 1634.
7. Connecticut, by Puritans from Massachusetts, in 1635.
8. Rhode Island, by Roger Williams, at Providence, in 1636.
9. Delaware, by the Swedes and Finns, in 1638.
10. Pennsylvania, by Swedes from Delaware, in 1643.
    By English Quakers, at Philadelphia, in 1683.
11. North Carolina, by emigrants from Virginia, in 1653.
12. South Carolina, by the English, near Charleston, in 1670.
13. Georgia, by the English, at Savannah, in 1733.

LESSON XXIII.

WASHINGTON'S EXPEDITION.

1. **Difficulties between the French and English.**—As years rolled on, both French and English increased rapidly in America. No boundary line had been agreed upon between the two nations. Each was jealous of the other. The French claimed the rich valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi, on the ground of having first explored them. They sent out agents to make friends of the Indians, and broke up an English post on the frontier, carrying off the traders to Canada.

2. The Indians who lived near the Ohio became alarmed at these movements. They sent one of their warriors to the French, to say that the Great Spirit had given these lands to them. But the French commander replied, "It is my land, and I will have it." The Indians then made a treaty with the English; and the governor of Virginia determined to send a messenger to the French, to forbid their trespassing on territory which he said belonged to England.

3. The person selected for this mission was **George Washington,**—the great Washington, "the father of his country,"—then a youth of twenty-one. Washington was born in a Virginia farm-house, near the Potomac River. He was brought up by a good mother, who taught him to love what was true and noble.

4. George was an excellent horseman. His mother had two favorite horses, one of which was not used to the saddle. As this horse was feeding on the lawn one day, some young men proposed to mount it. They tried in vain, however; it set them all at defiance. George, who was one of the youngest present, then made the attempt. In spite of its plunging and kicking, he succeeded in getting on its back, and kept his seat there, till, after a furious race, the animal fell exhausted.

5. At school, George was the leader of all the boys in both play and study. He became a good surveyor, and soon after leaving school was employed to survey a large tract of wild land on the Potomac. He camped out in the woods, shot his own game, cooked it for himself, used a chip for his dish, and his fingers for forks. He soon became known for his courage and fidelity, and this led the governor of Virginia to choose him for his messenger to the French.

6. **Perils of the Journey.**—The French fort lay in the north-west of Pennsylvania. The route thither ran through forests and swamps, and over rivers swollen by rain and snow. It was with great difficulty Washington reached it. He delivered his message without effect. The French commander pointed to his boats, all ready for starting, and told him that in the spring he intended sailing down the Ohio, and destroying every English post he met with.

7. Several friendly Indians had accompanied Washington, and these the French tried to entice from him with rum and presents. Washington could hardly get them away. At last, finding he could do nothing, he set out on his return, having first learned all he could about the plans of the French. His journey home was full of dangers. It was extremely cold. The horses were disabled, and he had to go on foot through the snow. A treacherous Indian guide fired at his head at the distance of a few feet, but missed his aim.

8. At length, with a single companion, he came to a deep river, full of drifting ice. Having made a raft, they got on board, and tried to push it across with poles. It soon became jammed between cakes of ice. Washington, while trying to steady the raft with his pole, was jerked into the water, and narrowly escaped drowning.

9. Through all the dangers of the way, Washington was preserved by a Higher Power. He made his report to the governor of Virginia, and was praised by all for the gallantry with which he had discharged his duty. A long war between the French and English followed, which is known as **the French and Indian War.**

LESSON XXIV.

FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.—BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT.

1. **Fort Du Quesne.**—By Washington's advice, the English commenced a fort where Pittsburg, in Pennsylvania, now stands. Before its completion it was captured by the French, who finished it and called it Fort Du Quesne [*du kane*].

2. A force commanded by Washington had been sent out to garrison this post. Though too late to save it, they surprised a body of French by a night attack, and completely defeated them. Washington was soon after surrounded in a stockade, which he had constructed, by a large force of French and Indians. He had to surrender, but was allowed to retain his stores, and march out with the honors of war.

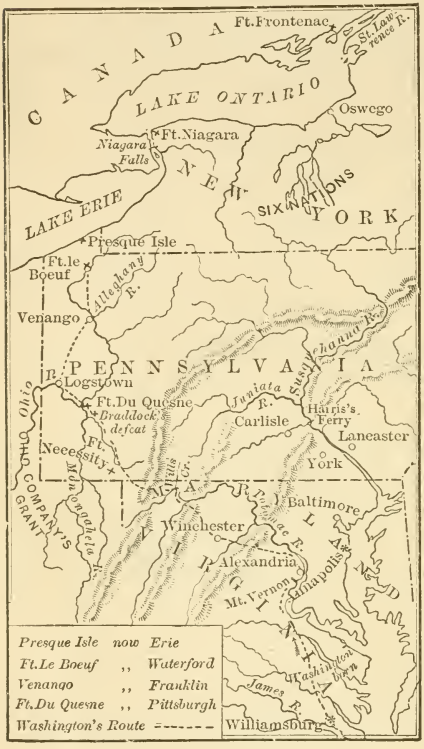
3. In 1755, **General Braddock** came over from Great Britain with a powerful army, to attack the French. He advanced against Fort Du Quesne, moving but slowly, in consequence of having to make his own road through the wilderness. Washington joined his army, and warned the general to be on his guard against Indian ambuscades. But Braddock paid no attention to his warnings. The savages, he said, could do no harm to British troops.

4. **Braddock's Defeat.**—When Braddock's army was within a few miles of Fort Du Quesne, a deadly fire was suddenly poured in upon them; and Indian yells rent the air in front and on each side. The savages were concealed behind trees and rocks, and the British were cut down without a chance of returning their fire. The van was seized with a panic, and fell back on the main body. The Virginia Rangers, who were used to Indian warfare, stood their ground bravely for a time; but the rest were thrown into confusion, left their baggage, and fled from the field.

5. Braddock was mortally wounded, while trying to rally his men. The chief command then fell to Washington. He threw himself into the thickest of the fight. Two horses were shot under him. Four balls passed through his coat. The Indians aimed at him again and

again; still he escaped uninjured. But in vain he strove to turn the fortunes of the day.

6. The British fled many miles, destroying their artillery and stores. The fine army of Braddock was broken up, and that by a much smaller force of French and Indians. The French commander had at first thought of abandoning the fort. One of his officers persuaded him to stay and meet the enemy; and with the aid of his Indian allies, he was, as we have seen, completely successful.



SCENE OF HOSTILITIES IN THE OHIO VALLEY.

7. The English colonists had expected much from Braddock, and were greatly disappointed at his defeat. In the north, however, they had better success. Near Lake George, in the state of New York, they defeated a large army of French and Indians, who were making a descent on one of their forts. They also conquered a large tract lying east of Maine, now called New Brunswick.

8. **Siege of Fort William Henry.**—In 1756, the French sent over a distinguished general named Montcalm, to command their forces in America. Taking advantage of the inactivity of the English general, Montcalm captured a number of places. In 1757, marching down from Canada into the state of New York with a large force of French and Indians, he laid siege to Fort William Henry, on the southern shore of Lake George. This post was bravely defended by its commander, who hoped for relief from a British army under General Webb, at another fort, only fourteen miles off.

9. But Webb was afraid to meet Montcalm, and let the garrison of Fort William Henry take care of itself. Still the officer in command gallantly held out. It was not till half his cannon burst, and his ammunition gave out, that he agreed to surrender. Honorable terms were granted. The troops were to be allowed to join their comrades at the other fort.

10. No sooner, however, had they commenced marching out of Fort William Henry, than the savages in Montcalm's army began to rob and murder them. A general massacre ensued. In spite of the efforts of the French officers, only a part of the British army escaped. Up to this time, the French had been generally successful. They now possessed twenty times as much territory in America as the English.

LESSON XXV.

CLOSE OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. **English Successes.**—The English losses had been caused by the inefficiency of their generals. In 1758,

therefore, they selected better leaders. Several expeditions were planned. One of these resulted in the capture of Louisburg, a strong French post on an island northeast of Nova Scotia. The French commander held out till his ships were taken, his cannon destroyed, and his works battered down. Nor would he have surrendered then, had it not been for the prayers of the inhabitants.

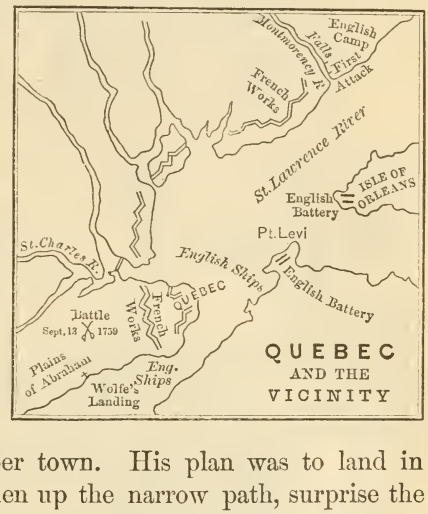
2. Montcalm, the gallant French general, was at Ticonderoga. Here he was attacked by a superior force of English, but he drove them back with loss. An English expedition directed against Fort Du Quesne was more successful. One division of the army, sent out to reconnoitre, was defeated; but, when Washington and his brave Virginians approached the fort, the French commander blew up the magazine, set fire to the works, and retreated with his men in boats.

3. Washington raised his country's flag over the ruins of Fort Du Quesne. A new block-house was erected, and the place was called Pittsburg, after Pitt, an eminent English statesman. Returning soon after to Virginia, Washington was received with great honor. The district in which he lived had elected him to the House of Burgesses, as the legislature of the colony was called. When he took his seat in that body, the Speaker rose and thanked him in the name of his country for his distinguished services. Washington rose to reply—blushed—stammered—trembled—but could not say a word. "Sit down, Mr. Washington," said the Speaker; "your modesty equals your courage, and that surpasses the power of any language I possess."

4. **Fall of Quebec.**—The strongest place now in possession of the French was Quebec. This had been founded about the same time as Jamestown. The fort

stood on an almost perpendicular bluff, two hundred feet high. It was strongly built, and defended by a large army under Montcalm. This post the English determined to take. The heroic Wolfe, with eight thousand men, was sent against it. They arrived in the summer of 1759.

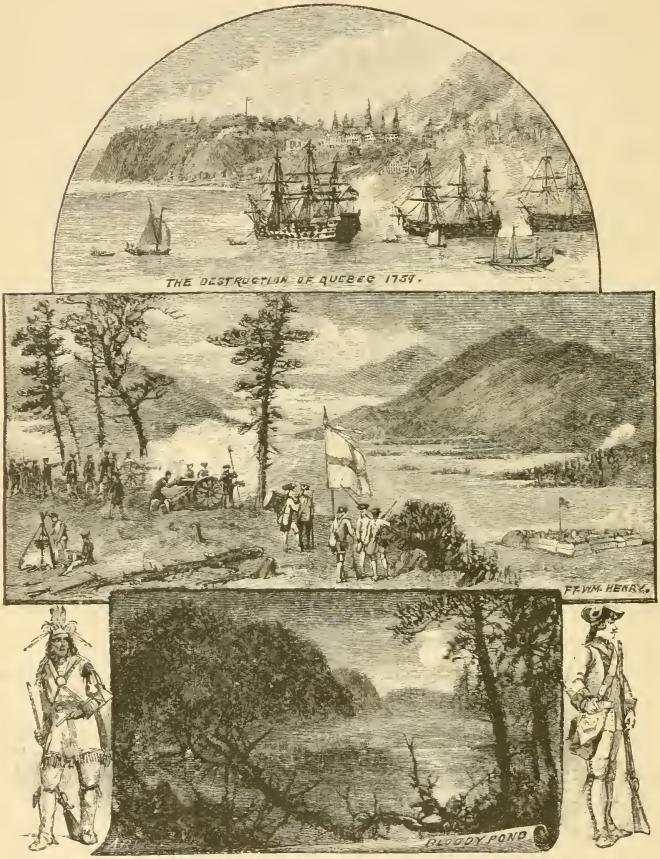
5. For several months Wolfe lay before Quebec. He made various attempts, but was baffled in all by the strength of the place. He could see but one chance of success, and that, slight as it was, he resolved to try. While sailing up the river, he had espied, a short distance above the fort, a steep rough path running up the face of the cliff amid rocks and bushes. This led, he was told, to the Plains of Abraham, which extended to the upper town. His plan was to land in the night, lead his men up the narrow path, surprise the French guard on the top, and then advance upon the fort.



6. This plan was carried out. Supporting themselves by roots and bushes, Wolfe's men climbed up the cliff, and put to flight the French guard which had fired on them as they approached the summit. By dawn the whole English army was on the heights. Montcalm was thunderstruck when he received these tidings. His men were at once in motion. A bloody battle took place. The English were successful. Wolfe fell at the moment

of victory, thanking God for his success, and declaring that he died happy.

7. Montcalm, also, was mortally wounded, while trying



to rally his men. He had done all he could to save the day, but in vain. The French fled into the town, and

three days afterward Quebec surrendered to the English. The next year Montreal was taken, and with it all Canada fell into the hands of the English. It has ever since remained in their possession.

8. Thus ended the French and Indian War. It lasted over six years, and cost the lives of thousands of brave men. Wolfe and Montcalm, the two gallant generals, were much lamented. The English have since raised a monument, bearing the name of each, on the spot where the battle was fought. Though England spent a great deal of money in this struggle, she in return vastly increased her possessions in the new world.

LESSON XXVI.

TROUBLES WITH THE GOVERNORS.

1. **Peace** now prevailed, and the colonies would have flourished if they had been left to themselves. But the King and Parliament of England wanted to control them and interfere with their affairs. Many of the governors, for years back, had been men who cared little for the colonies. Their chief aim was to enrich themselves, and deprive the people of their rights.

2. **Andros and the Charter.**—But the hardy settlers of America were not disposed to submit. On one occasion, Andros, who had been made governor of all New England, went to Connecticut, and told the people they must give up their charter. This was a paper setting forth their rights. It had been granted to them by a previous King; but the tyrannical James II. had revoked it, and sent Andros to take it away. The people were

opposed to its surrender, and crowded into the hall where the assembly were discussing the question.

3. The charter lay open on the table. On a sudden the candles were put out, and when they were relighted the charter could not be found. A patriot had made off with it, and hidden it in the hollow of a large oak, called from this "the charter oak." Two years afterward, the people heard that King James had been driven from his throne in England, on account of his tyranny. On this they seized Andros, sent him over to England, and drew the much-prized charter, uninjured, out of its hiding-place.

4. **Difficulty with Governor Fletcher.** — A few years after this, the King gave Governor Fletcher authority to command the militia of Connecticut; and he ordered them to turn out at Hartford on a certain day, for review. The people preferred having their own officers command them. When Fletcher arrived, he found a large body of men assembled, with their captain, named Wadsworth, at their head. "Read the King's order, by which I am to command the Connecticut militia," said Fletcher to his secretary. Just then Wadsworth gave a signal, and the drummers commenced beating their drums so loudly that the secretary could not be heard.

5. "Silence!" roared Fletcher, and beckoned to his secretary to go on. Before he could do so, the drums commenced again, drowning every other sound. "Silence!" again cried Fletcher, almost bursting with rage. The drummers stopped; but Wadsworth, stepping up fiercely with his drawn sword, bade them go on. "If you interrupt them again," said he to Fletcher, "I will make daylight shine through you." When Fletcher heard

this, he concluded to leave the Connecticut militia to their own officers.

6. **Taxation without Representation.**—The French and Indian War afforded a new pretext for wringing money out of America. The King and Parliament took the ground that, as the war had been in defence of the colonies, the colonies should pay for it. So they laid duties on various articles imported into America. The colonies were willing to bear the expense of the war. But they claimed that Parliament had no right to tax them, because they were not represented by any delegates in that body. Taxation without representation they would not submit to.

7. In 1760, Parliament took new measures for collecting the odious duty. The colonies were at once thrown into great excitement. Meetings were held, and the people protested against Parliament's assuming such despotic powers. The excitement was increased in 1765, by Parliament's passing the famous **Stamp Act.** By this act, all newspapers and almanacs, all bonds, notes, contracts, &c., were required to bear stamps, which were to be bought from the government at prices ranging from one cent to nearly thirty dollars. This tax the colonies determined to resist, if necessary, by force of arms.

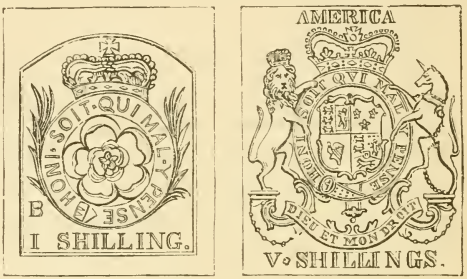
LESSON XXVII.

CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION.

1. **Indignation throughout the Colonies.**—When the news that the Stamp Act had passed reached Virginia, the House of Burgesses was in session. Among

the members was a young lawyer of burning eloquence and fearless spirit, named Patrick Henry. Indignant at this outrage on his country's rights, he poured forth an impassioned speech, which carried all before it. So boldly did he express himself, that the cry of "Treason! Treason!" was raised in different parts of the house, by members who favored the royal cause. But nothing could withstand the torrent of Patrick Henry's eloquence. It awakened a spirit of resistance in every noble breast.

2. The people did not confine themselves to words. They burned images of those who were appointed to sell the stamps. When vessels with stamps arrived, they tolled the bells, and walked the streets dressed in mourning. They destroyed whole boxes of stamps, and threatened all who should distribute or use them. So Parliament had to repeal this act. But it still claimed the right of taxation, and laid a duty on all tea, glass, paper, and painters' colors, imported into the colonies.



SPECIMENS OF STAMPS.

3. The colonists were still dissatisfied; and, when they heard that English soldiers had been ordered to Boston, to make them submit, they were more angry than ever. The soldiers, on their arrival, treated the people insolently, while their officers screened them from punish-

ment. They soon had a collision with the citizens of Boston, in which three of the latter were killed. This was called "the Boston Massacre."

4. **Throwing over Tea in Boston Harbor.**— Parliament at last saw fit to take off the duties from every article but tea. The colonists then determined not to use any tea. When ships containing this article came over, they would not let them land, but sent them back to England. At Boston, three ships full of tea having arrived, the governor insisted that they should not go back, but that their cargoes should be landed. So, after dark one night, a party of men disguised as Indians went on board of the ships, and threw the tea overboard into the harbor. This was done amid the cheers of a great crowd assembled on the wharf.

5. On their return, they passed a house where the British Admiral was spending the evening. Putting his head out of the window, he cried, "Well, boys, you've had a fine night for your Indian caper; but mind, you've got to pay the fiddler." "Oh! never mind," said one of the crowd; "just you come out here, and we'll settle the bill in two minutes." But the Admiral declined the invitation.

6. General Gage was now governor of Massachusetts. In stead of making friends of the people, he let his soldiers provoke them more and more. Even the boys did not escape. The red-coats interfered with their sports, broke through their skating-ponds, and, when they complained, called them young rebels. At last they assembled in a body and went to General Gage. They boldly told him how his soldiers had ill-treated them, and that they would bear it no longer. The general could not help admiring them. "Go, my brave boys," he replied, "and

be assured that if my troops trouble you again they shall be punished."

7. **Resistance determined upon.**—Parliament persisted in its claims; the colonies denied them. Neither would yield. In vain General Gage tried to bribe the leading patriots. The King had not money enough to buy them. Delegates from the different colonies met at Philadelphia in 1774, to agree upon measures of resistance. Bodies of militia were formed. Officers were appointed. "Minute-men," as they were called, agreed to shoulder their muskets at a moment's notice. Patrick Henry again raised his voice in Virginia. His thrilling words, "*Give me liberty or give me death*," were reëchoed far and wide throughout the colonies.

LESSON XXVIII.

COMMENCEMENT OF THE REVOLUTION.

1. In 1775, the war, long foreseen, broke out. It is known as **the Revolutionary War.** Early in that year, the British Parliament declared that Massachusetts was in rebellion, and sent out more troops. General Gage had already fortified Boston Neck, which connects the city with the mainland. The patriots had some trouble in getting their ammunition out of Boston. They hid their cannon in loads of manure, and their powder and cartridges in market-baskets and candle-boxes. Thus they passed the sentinels unsuspected.

2. The patriots collected most of their stores at Concord, a few miles from Boston. Hearing of this, General Gage one night sent a force of eight hundred men to de-

stroy them. It was done very secretly; yet the patriots found out what was going on. The British, as they advanced toward Concord, heard bells ringing and guns firing in the surrounding country. These were signals for the minute-men to assemble.

3. **Battle of Lexington.**—A little more than half way between Boston and Concord was the village of Lexington. Here the British arrived shortly after daylight. They found a body of minute-men on the green. "Disperse, ye rebels!" said the British leader, riding up to them. Shots were then fired. Several of the Americans fell. The rest gave way. This was the first blood shed in the Revolution.

4. The British went on to Concord. Here some of them held the bridge, while the rest went to destroy the stores. Meanwhile some American militia-men came up, and a skirmish took place at the bridge. Several fell on both sides; and, as soon as their companions came back, the British were glad to commence their homeward march. They had destroyed two cannon, had thrown a great number of cannon-balls into the river and wells, and had broken to pieces about sixty barrels of flour. Most of the stores had been carried off to a place of safety before they arrived.

5. A large quantity of flour was saved by a miller named Wheeler. It was stored in his barn, along with some of his own. When the soldiers came to search the place, Wheeler told them that he was a miller, and made his living by grinding grain. Then putting his hand on a barrel which belonged to himself, he said: "This is my flour; surely you will not destroy private property." The soldiers thought from what he said that it was all his, and went away without doing any injury.

6. The British suffered sorely on their return. The alarm had spread, and the brave men of the surrounding

country came up from all sides. Posting themselves behind barns and houses, trees and fences, they poured in a deadly fire on the retreating British. In vain the latter tried to return it. All the way to Boston, they were thus harassed. Their ranks kept thinning, and they were

ready to sink with fatigue. They would never have reached the city, had not fresh troops been sent to their aid.

7. **The Country Aroused.**—The news of the battle of Lexington was the signal for a general rising. The farmer left his plough, and the mechanic his workshop. Even old men and boys hastened to arm themselves. The wife girded the sword about her husband. The mother blessed her son, and bade him go strike a blow for his country.

8. One mother fitted out her elder son with a fowling-piece and slugs made out of her pewter spoons. Her younger boy was only sixteen. For him she had nothing but an old rusty sword. Giving him this, she dashed away a tear, and bade him follow his brother. "Beg or borrow a sword, my child," she said; "or you will find one. Some coward, I dare say, will be running away. Then take his gun and march forward."

9. At Barn'sta-ble, the only child of a farmer joined a company that was about to march to Cambridge. As they passed the father's house on leaving the village, he came forth and said: "God be with you all, my friends! and, John, if you, my son, are called into battle, take care that you behave manfully, or else let me never see your face again." This was the spirit everywhere. Twenty thousand patriots were soon in arms around Boston.

LESSON XXIX.

CAPTURE OF TICONDEROGA.—ETHAN ALLEN.

1. **The spirit of resistance** was not confined to New England. In Virginia, the governor thought it prudent to take refuge on a British vessel. The governors of North and South Carolina were also obliged to flee. Just a month after the battle of Lexington, a meeting was held at Charlotte, North Carolina. The people there went so far as to declare themselves independent of the King, and said they would maintain their freedom with their lives. This was the first Declaration of Independence.

2. **Ticonderoga,** an important fort on Lake Champlain, was garrisoned by British soldiers. Ethan Allen and his brave Green Mountain Boys resolved to capture this post. The Green Mountains are in Vermont; and the hardy pioneers of this region called themselves Green Mountain Boys. They assembled on the shore of the lake, opposite Ticonderoga, without the garrison's suspecting that any foe was near.

3. One of the party went to the fort, pretending to be an awkward country boy, who wanted to be shaved. After learning all he could about the place, he returned to his companions. In the night they commenced crossing, but there were not boats enough to carry all the men over. As daylight approached, Allen, not daring to wait for any more, led his men up to the fort. As he drew near, a sentinel snapped his gun at the party; but it missed fire. He then ran into the fort to raise an alarm, closely followed by the Americans.

4. The frightened soldiers leaped from their beds, but it was only to find themselves prisoners. The command-

ing officer rushed to the door of his quarters in his night-clothes, followed by his wife. Allen, pointing to his men, bade him surrender. "By what authority," he asked, "do you command it?" "In the name of the great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," was Allen's reply. There was no help for it. The fort was surrendered, with its stores, powder, and cannon—all of which were much needed by the patriots.

5. **Ethan Allen** soon after planned an invasion of Canada. Trying to take Montreal, he was himself taken by the British. They put him in irons, and sent him over to England. Here he was in danger of being hanged as a rebel. It was more than two years before he was released. Sent from place to place as a prisoner, he was half starved, and treated with insult and cruelty.

6. On one British ship he was treated with kindness, and well did he repay it. There were a number of American prisoners on board, and some of them formed a plan to kill the captain and seize on the ship and a large sum of money which it contained. Having won over a number of the crew, they tried to get Allen to join them. But he indignantly refused, and told them he would peril his life in defence of the captain who had treated them all so well. Owing to his threats and persuasions, they gave up the plan.

7. Ethan Allen was as honest as he was brave. He once gave his note for one hundred and fifty dollars to a person whom he owed. When it became due, he could not pay it. He was sued, and employed a lawyer to get the matter put off till he could raise the money. He was utterly surprised when his lawyer rose in court and denied the signature of the note. Rushing up to him, he cried: "Sir, I didn't hire you to come here and lie. That's a

true note. I signed it, and I'll pay it. I want no shuffling. All I want is time." He obtained the time he wanted, and the note was paid.

8. The very day on which Ethan Allen took Ticonderoga (May 10th, 1775), **the Continental Congress** met the second time at Philadelphia. They prepared for war in earnest. A large amount of paper money was issued. George Washington, of whom we heard before in the French and Indian War, was elected commander-in-chief. He hastened to Cambridge, near Boston, to take command of the patriots there assembled. Before he arrived, however, a large number of fresh troops from England had reached Boston, and an important battle had been fought.

LESSON XXX.

BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.

1. **Affairs at Boston.**—In June, 1775, (before Washington had taken the chief command), ten thousand British troops lay in Boston. Nearly twice as many Americans had gathered around the city. But they were poorly armed, and many of them had never been in battle. Hearing that the British intended fortifying Bunker Hill, the American general determined to be beforehand with them. Accordingly, that same evening, he sent Colonel Prescott, with one thousand men, to take possession of Bunker Hill, and throw up a breastwork of earth for its defence; but Breed's Hill, near by, was selected instead.

2. The men worked silently with their pick-axes and spades all night. They heard the British sentinels at Boston cry "All's Well!" But the British did not hear

them, and the next morning were amazed to see a long intrenchment commanding the city. A battle was resolved on. The flower of the British army was sent to dislodge the Americans, and the British ships in the har-

BOSTON AND VICINITY IN 1776.

bor opened a fire on the hill. The roofs and steeples of Boston and the country around were filled with anxious spectators.

3. **Battle of Bunker Hill.**—Twice the British troops charged up the hill. The Americans had been ordered to wait till they saw the whites of the enemy's eyes, and then to fire low and not waste their powder. They

obeyed the order, and twice the British veterans recoiled before them. Fresh troops were then brought up, and a third attack was made. Unfortunately, the powder of the Americans now gave out. They received the British with stones and clubbed muskets. But it was useless to resist, and a retreat was ordered.

4. As they were leaving the works, General Warren, a distinguished patriot, fell mortally wounded. Prescott had offered him the command in the morning. He declined it, saying he had come to learn, and served in the ranks as a private. The British general rejoiced at his fall, saying it was worth that of five hundred ordinary soldiers.

5. Though driven from their ground, the Americans had greatly the advantage at Bunker Hill. They lost less than half as many men as the British, and, if their ammunition had lasted, would doubtless have remained masters of the field. A splendid monument has since been raised near the spot where Warren fell, to commemorate this battle.

6. Among those who did good service at Bunker Hill was **Gen. Putnam.** He was ploughing when he heard of the battle of Lexington. Leaving his plough in the field, without even waiting to change his clothes, he mounted his horse and galloped off for Cambridge. He had served in the French and Indian War, and was nearly sixty years old; but he was strong and brave as ever.

7. Putnam's farm was in Connecticut. Here, when a young man, he was much troubled by a cunning wolf that prowled about the country, destroying what she could, and always escaping the hunters. In one night she killed seventy of his sheep and goats. Putnam and several of his neighbors resolved to hunt her to the death.

They tracked her to her den, which was a deep cavern, and tried to drive her out by throwing in burning straw and sulphur; but in vain. The dogs were then sent in. They soon came out howling and badly wounded, and refused to return.

8. At last, Putnam threw off his coat, tied a rope to one of his legs, and with a torch in one hand and his loaded gun in the other, descended into the den. His companions, who were anxiously listening above, soon heard an angry growl and the sharp crack of a musket. They drew Putnam up. Again he descended, and this time, on being drawn up, he had the dead wolf by the ears.

9. Many a thrilling scene had "old Put," as his friends called him, passed through. He once, at the risk of his life, and not without some dreadful burns, saved Fort Edward from being consumed, and the magazine from exploding. At another time, he was captured by a party of Indians, who prepared to torture him. They tied him to a tree, piled up fagots around him, and set them on fire. A thunder shower put out the flames. Again they lighted the pile. Hope had died in Putnam's bosom, when a French officer burst through the bushes, hurled the savages right and left, scattered the blazing wood, and released the prisoner.

10. Shortly before the Revolution, General Gage, in Putnam's presence, expressed the opinion that five thousand British veterans could march from one end of America to the other unharmed. "So they might," replied Putnam, "if they behaved themselves properly, and paid for what they wanted. But should they attempt it as enemies, the American women would knock them on the head with their ladles."

LESSON XXXI.

INVASION OF CANADA.—SIEGE OF BOSTON.

1. Ethan Allen had failed to take Montreal. This did not prevent Congress from carrying on the **invasion of Canada.** They hoped the Canadians would join in the Revolution. Besides, they wanted to secure a large amount of stores deposited at Quebec. General Montgomery was placed at the head of the invading force. Before long, St. John's and Montreal, two important posts, had surrendered. Quebec remained. But the American soldiers had enlisted for a certain time; this time was up. Most of them insisted on returning, and Montgomery was left with but a small part of his force.

2. Just at this time, Benedict Arnold was leading a body of Americans to join their countrymen in Canada. They were pushing their way through the northern part of Maine, a pathless wilderness, and came near perishing from cold, sickness, and hunger. On one occasion, they had eaten their last ox, their last dog, and had nothing but roots and their moose-skin moccasins to live on, when they were relieved by the arrival of timely supplies.

3. Joined by this heroic band, Montgomery lost no time in laying siege to Quebec. But his few small cannon could make no impression on its strong walls. At last, it was resolved to storm the place. The attack was made by Montgomery and Arnold at different points. It was a desperate attempt to make with only nine hundred effective men.

4. In spite of a blinding snow-storm, the Americans advanced bravely to the assault. But it was in vain. Montgomery was shot down at the head of his men. Ar-

nold was disabled by a bullet in the leg. The muskets of many of the Americans were rendered useless by the snow. One party was obliged to surrender on the spot. The rest continued the siege till they heard that a powerful British army was approaching. Then they hastily retreated; and soon all Canada was again in the hands of the British.

5. **The British evacuate Boston.**—The King and Parliament found it was not so easy to conquer "the rebels" as they had expected. So they sent to Germany, and hired a number of Hessians, as they were called, to come and fight for them. In the mean time, Congress was busy in collecting stores and buying powder. They urged Washington to attack the British at Boston, with the force collected under his command at Cambridge. But ammunition was scarce; the men, brave as they were, needed discipline; so that Washington did not think it prudent to take the field till the spring of 1776.

6. Dorchester Heights command the city and harbor of Boston. Early in March, General Washington sent a body of men by night to throw up intrenchments there. It was hard work, for the ground was frozen. The Americans, however, plied their pick-axes diligently, and by morning had raised a strong breastwork of earth. When the British general saw what had been done, he determined to dislodge the enemy. But a storm set in, and before it ceased the Americans had fortified themselves so strongly that he was afraid to make the attempt.

7. As the cannon on Dorchester Heights swept the whole of Boston, the British army had to leave, or *evacuate*, the city. They sailed away in their ships, to the great joy of the patriots. Those who had remained in the city during the siege had suffered much. Besides being in-

sulted and maltreated by the soldiers, they could hardly get food to eat or wood to keep them warm. After first sailing to the north, the British general landed his men on Staten Island, with the view of attacking New York. Washington had already reached the city and prepared for its defence.

LESSON XXXII.

ATTACK ON CHARLESTON.—DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

1. **The British repulsed at Charleston.**—In June, 1776, the people of South Carolina heard that a strong British fleet, with a large army on board, was about to attack Charleston. They quickly erected a fort of palmetto-wood and earth, and garrisoned it with brave men under Colonel Moultrie. They did not have to wait long for the enemy. One British ship came up after another, and soon a heavy fire was opened on the fort. But it did little harm. Palmetto-wood is soft; and the balls, in stead of splitting or tearing it, sank into it without doing any injury.

2. It was not so, however, with the fire from the fort. This did fearful execution on the British ships. At one time, the quarter-deck of the admiral's vessel was cleared of every man except the admiral himself. The troops on board landed, and tried to reach the fort, but were driven back. At last, having kept up the attack for nine hours without any success, the British were obliged to retire. They suffered much in the action; the Americans, but little.

3. In the midst of the battle, a British ball struck the

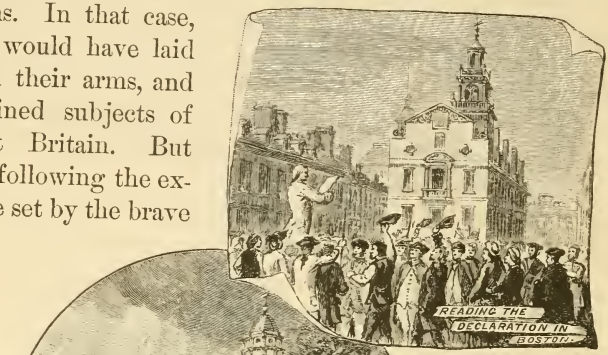
flag-staff of the fort. The flag was carried away, and fell in front of the fort, on the beach. Then a brave heart showed its courage. **Sergeant Jasper,** amid the balls that rained from the British vessels, leaped over the rampart, ran along the beach, and secured the flag. Then, fastening it to the sponge-staff of a cannon, he again raised it over the fort amid the cheers of his companions. After the battle, Governor Rutledge presented him his own sword for this gallant deed.

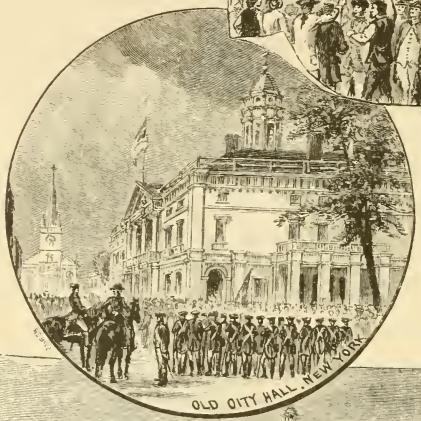
4. Jasper was afterward of great service to the American army. He acted as a scout, and brought them information about the British. He was once scouting with a single companion, when he saw a party of ten British soldiers taking some prisoners to Savannah. It was said that the prisoners were to be hanged, and Jasper determined to save them. For some time the two Americans kept on the track of the party, without seeing any chance of attempting a rescue. At last they drew near Savannah. Two miles from the city was a famous spring, and here the British, with their prisoners, stopped for a drink.

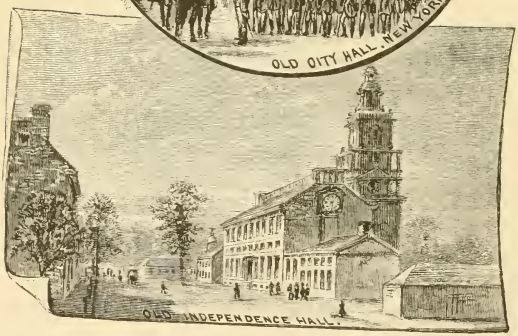
5. Two of the party were left on guard, while the rest laid aside their guns and went down to the spring. This was the moment Jasper and his companion had waited for. Shooting down the soldiers on duty, and knocking over several others with their clubbed muskets, they obtained possession of the loaded guns of the British. The latter had to yield to their two brave enemies. The rescued Americans were then unbound, and armed with the guns of their guard; and Jasper and his men marched off in triumph with their prisoners.

6. **The 4th of July** is always kept as a great holiday in the United States. Do you know why it is kept? Because on the 4th of July, 1776, the Continental Con-

gress adopted a Declaration of Independence. Up to this time they had hoped that the King and Parliament would give up their unjust claims. In that case, they would have laid down their arms, and remained subjects of Great Britain. But now, following the example set by the brave







people of Charlotte, they said the King should rule over them no more. They boldly declared their independence, and pledged their lives for its support. After this, the thirteen colonies were called "the Thirteen United States of America."

7. While Congress was discussing the Declaration, the streets of Philadelphia were filled with crowds, anxious to know what it would do. When the old bell-ringer pealed the bell of the state-house, as a signal that the bill had passed, their joy knew no bounds. Bonfires were lighted, and houses were illuminated. In New York, the people showed their delight by pulling down a great leaden statue of the King, and moulding it into bullets to fire against his soldiers. In Boston, the Declaration was read at a public meeting, amid the cheers of thousands. On the preceding page is a picture of Independence Hall, in Philadelphia, the building in which Congress met and the Declaration of Independence was signed. You may also see the old City Hall in New York, and the people cheering for the Declaration in Boston.

LESSON XXXIII.

BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

1. In the summer of 1776, **New York** became the centre of the war. General Howe was now the British commander. Besides the men who had been driven from Boston, he had many fresh troops just from Europe. Among the rest were a large number of Hessians. With these he advanced on New York by way of Long Island. The Americans had thrown up fortifications at the west end of the island, opposite New York, where the city of Brooklyn now stands. Nine thousand men were sent over, to keep the British in check.

2. **Battle of Long Island.**—The British army advanced in three divisions. One of these, making a circuit over the hills, managed to get behind the advanced

detachments that had been thrown out by the Americans. While the patriots were busily engaged with the enemy in front, they were dismayed to hear a firing in their rear. They soon saw that they were surrounded. A few fought their way through the British, and reached the American lines. Many fell; a still greater number were made prisoners. Howe advanced to within a short distance of the fortifications, but, in stead of attacking them, waited for his fleet to come up.

3. During the battle, Washington crossed from New York. He saw his best troops falling, without the power to help them. He could only hope to save those who remained by a timely retreat. On the third night after the battle, while Howe was still waiting for his fleet, the whole American army embarked in boats, and, with their baggage and stores, were conveyed to New York. A thick fog concealed their movements; the boats were rowed with muffled oars; and the British had no idea of what was going on till the Americans were beyond their reach.

4. A woman living near the river saw the Americans embarking, and sent a negro to inform the British. Fortunately, he fell into the hands of the Hessians, who could not understand what he said. Had it not been for this, the whole army might have been captured. The battle of Long Island was most disastrous to the American cause. Numbers deserted from the army; and many who were before in doubt which side to join, now decided in favor of the King.

5. On first approaching the city, Howe had sent a letter to Washington, for the purpose of conciliating the Americans. Washington refused to receive it, because Howe would not acknowledge him as commander of the

American army. After the battle of Long Island, Howe made a second attempt. A committee of Congress met him. They found he had no authority to recognize their independence, but could only grant them pardon, and receive them back as subjects of Great Britain. They wanted no pardon, and were determined never to be subjects of Great Britain. So nothing was effected.

6. **Attempt on the Life of Washington.**— Some of the people of New York were opposed to the Revolution. They were called Tories, while those who favored it were known as Whigs. While Washington was in New York, about this time, several tories formed a plot to poison him. They bribed one of his guard to put some arsenic in a dish of peas prepared for his dinner. The plot was revealed to Washington through a young girl who had overheard it.

7. To discover the guilty party, Washington had a trusty soldier disguised as a servant, and sent him into the kitchen to watch the peas. He had not been there long, before he saw one of his comrades come anxiously to the door and look in. Presently he entered, and hesitating, as if horror-struck at the act, sprinkled a powder in the pot in which the peas were cooking. Washington was at once informed of this. At dinner, when he had seated himself among his officers, he asked them to wait for a moment, and ordered in his guard.

8. Fixing his eyes on the guilty man, he put a spoonful of peas on his plate, and asked him, "Shall I eat of these?" "I don't know," stammered the man, turning deadly pale. Washington took some on his knife, and again asked, "Shall I eat of these?" The man could not say a word, but raised his hand as if to prevent it. A chicken was brought in, and fed with some of the peas;

it died on the spot. This proved that they had been poisoned. The man was carried fainting from the room, and Washington was saved.

9. This same year, a British sloop-of-war put into the island called Martha's Vineyard. It was in want of a spar, and the only stick of timber there that would answer the purpose was a liberty-tree, erected by the patriots. This tree the captain said he must have; but three brave girls, not yet sixteen years old, said he should not have it. The night before it was to be cut down, they went in the dark, bored several holes in the tree, and filled them with gunpowder. Then, lighting a slow-match, they blew the tree to pieces. So his Majesty's sloop-of-war had to go without a spar.

LESSON XXXIV.

WASHINGTON'S RETREAT.—TRENTON.—PRINCETON.

1. **Retreat of Washington from New York.**—We left Washington in New York. His army was discouraged by the defeat on Long Island. One fourth of the men were sick. He could not hope to repel the British, who were preparing to cross from Long Island and attack the city. The only course left him was to retreat, and accordingly he drew off his men to the north. The British immediately took possession of the city. They retained it till the end of the war. Howe, with most of his army, kept on in pursuit of Washington.

2. Washington felt hardly strong enough to risk a battle. He retreated as his enemy advanced, but so slowly that frequent skirmishes took place. At last a battle was

fought at White Plains, without any decided advantage to either party. After this Washington took his army across the Hudson River, to New Jersey, leaving nearly three thousand of his best men in Fort Washington. The British made a spirited attack on this post, and the garrison had to surrender. Washington is said to have wept, as from the other side of the river he saw his men falling beneath the British bayonets.

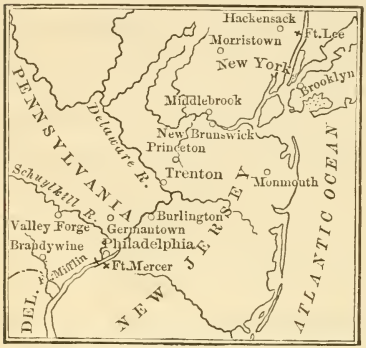
3. The loss of Fort Washington and its garrison was the heaviest blow the patriots had yet received. Lord Cornwallis [*corn-wol'lis*] immediately set out in pursuit of the American army, now much reduced in size. Sadly this little band retreated across New Jersey. Many of them, ragged and bare-footed, left their blood-stained tracks on the frozen ground. The British pressed on hotly in pursuit. But Washington reached the Delaware River, secured all the boats for many miles, and went over into Pennsylvania with his suffering men. Unable to cross the Delaware, Cornwallis resolved to wait till it should be frozen over. Dividing his army, he stationed detachments at Trenton, Princeton, and other points.

4. **Washington's Victory at Trenton.**—Washington now saw he must do something to encourage his men. He resolved to cross the Delaware, and surprise a large body of Hessians stationed at Trenton. Christmas night was chosen for the attempt, as a time when they would likely be carousing, and off their guard. The night was dark and bitterly cold. The Delaware was full of ice. Part of the Americans, however, succeeded in getting across. They completely surprised the Hessians, who at once threw down their arms.

5. Washington durst not remain at Trenton, for he knew the British from the posts around would soon be

upon him. So he immediately recrossed into Pennsylvania with his prisoners. In gaining this glorious victory, he lost only four men, two of whom were frozen to death. The British, who had thought the Revolution was almost at an end, now found they were mistaken.

6. **Battle of Princeton.**—A few days after this victory, Washington again crossed the Delaware to Trenton. Cornwallis, anxious for a battle, soon made his appearance. Night was near at hand, and, after some skirmishing, both parties rested on their arms. Washington felt he was no match for Cornwallis, and determined to disappoint him. Leaving his fires burning, and posting a sentinel here and there, to deceive the enemy, he noiselessly withdrew his men in the night, and marched to Princeton, to surprise the British stationed there. When Cornwallis woke the next morning, he could see no enemy. He had been outgeneralled.



BATTLE-FIELDS IN NEW JERSEY.

7. Washington did not surprise the British at Princeton, for he met them already on the march to join Cornwallis. A battle ensued. At first the Americans, having no bayonets, gave way. But Washington placed himself before the advancing British, and his men rallied to support their beloved chief. The British were repulsed. Washington had gained another victory. He led his men, exhausted as they were by want of food

and sleep, to Morristown, and there fixed his winter-quarters.

8. Washington's men suffered much at Morristown from cold and sickness, during the winter of 1777. The small-pox broke out among them, and many died. The people of the place were true patriots, and did all they could to relieve the suffering soldiers. They gave them the best they had, saying, "Nothing is too good for those who fight for our country." Washington sent out several expeditions in the course of the winter, and recovered nearly the whole of Jersey.

9. Cornwallis's army was much larger than Washington's. It was feared, if he knew this, he would fall upon Morristown. So the Americans had recourse to a stratagem to deceive him. There was a man in the camp, whom they suspected of being a British spy. A false statement was made out of the men and ammunition at Morristown, representing the Americans as much better off than they really were. An officer, as if by chance, left the paper on a table by which the suspected spy was sitting, and went out for a few moments. On his return, both the paper and the spy were missing. They no doubt found their way to Cornwallis, and misled him as to the strength of the Americans.

LESSON XXXV.

BURGOYNE'S CAMPAIGN

1. **Invasion of New York by Burgoyne.**—In 1777, another powerful British army took the field, under the command of General Burgoyne. Starting from Can-

ada, Burgoyne invaded the state of New York. On the bank of Lake Champlain, he gave a great war-feast to a number of Indians, many of whom joined his army. Ticonderoga and Fort Edward were taken in succession. The Americans who had garrisoned these posts, fell back as Burgoyne advanced. To delay his march, bridges were broken down, and the roads obstructed.

2. The northern American army was commanded by General Schuyler [*ski'ler*]. One night, when the general was preparing to retire to bed in his own house, a servant, passing into the room, caught a glimpse of a figure concealed behind the door. Pretending not to notice it, she managed to tell her master in an undertone what she had seen. An alarm was raised. The person fled, but was overtaken by the guard. It was an Indian, who had hidden himself behind the door to murder the general.

3. Before leaving Canada, Burgoyne had sent a large detachment to overrun the western part of New York. This force met with a brave resistance at Fort Stanwix. The American general, Herkimer, advanced with some militia-men to relieve this fort. He fell into an ambuscade, and, early in the action, received a wound in the leg. Seated on a hillock, he continued to give his orders. While the enemy's balls were falling round him, he coolly drew his pipe from his pocket, lighted it, and commenced smoking, while he directed the movements of his men. They fought bravely, but were utterly defeated.

4. The fort still held out, and Arnold, with a detachment from Schuyler's army, undertook to relieve it. When a short distance from the British, Arnold contrived to get a report spread among them that a large body of Americans was within a few hours march of their camp. A panic seized them, and regulars, tories, and Indians,

were soon in full flight. Tents, baggage, provisions, and artillery, were left behind. The besieging force was broken up, and the fort was saved.

5. **Battle of Bennington.**—A second detachment was sent by Burgoyne to Bennington, Vermont, to

BATTLE-FIELD OF BENNINGTON.

capture the stores deposited there. General Stark met them with some brave militia-men, hastily collected. When he saw the British forming for battle, Stark thus addressed his troops:—"See men! There are the redcoats. We must beat them to-day, or Molly Stark's a widow!" And they did beat the red-coats. Six hundred of the British were taken prisoners.

6. Among Stark's men was a minister, who wanted to fight, but had conscientious scruples about doing so till he

had invited the enemy to surrender. So, going near their camp before the battle, he commenced preaching to them, and urging them to lay down their arms. A volley of musketry was the reply. "Now give me a gun," said the minister to a friend who had accompanied him. The way he handled his gun in the battle showed that he had quite overcome his conscientious scruples.

7. Burgoyne had depended much on these two expeditions. Their failure was a severe blow. The Indians became discouraged and departed. The tories were afraid to join him. Provisions grew scarce. The Americans carefully removed their cattle and every thing that could be of use to his army. Mrs. Schuyler, by her husband's orders, set fire to her own fields of grain, to prevent their falling into the hands of the enemy. Meanwhile, the farmers of New York and New England were pouring into the American camp.

8. **Battles of Stillwater.**—Just at this time, Congress unjustly removed Schuyler from the command of the northern army, and appointed General Gates in his stead. Deeply wounded as he was by this injustice, Schuyler did not resent it. Gates determined to make a stand on the west bank of the Hudson, and erected fortifications there. Burgoyne could go no farther without giving battle. This he resolved to do. On the 19th of September, 1777, the first battle of Stillwater was fought. The action was most severe and lasted till night. Though neither party gained a decided victory, the Americans had the advantage.

9. Burgoyne was now in greater danger than ever. He had sent for aid to the British general at New York, but had received no answer. Again he must either starve or fight. He resolved on another engagement, and on the

7th of October the second battle of Stillwater took place. This time the Americans were completely victorious. Morgan, with his riflemen, and Arnold, whom you have heard of before, repelled the furious charges of the British, and drove them from their ground. In vain Burgoyne strove to rally his men. The Americans were left in possession of the field.

10. As soon as night set in, Burgoyne fell back on Saratoga. He hoped to be able to retreat. But it was too late; he was hemmed in on all sides. His messages to General Clinton were still unanswered. No other course was left than to surrender. This he did. All his men, nearly six thousand in number, laid down their arms, and gave up their baggage, cannon, and ammunition, at Saratoga. What rejoicings there were throughout the country over the glorious news that Burgoyne's great army had surrendered to the "rebels" it had come to crush!

LESSON XXXVI.

BRANDYWINE.—GERMANTOWN.—VALLEY FORGE.

1. **Howe's Advance on Philadelphia.**—While these events were going on in the north, Washington was trying to keep General Howe in check. Unable to bring Washington to an engagement in New Jersey, Howe had put to sea with eighteen thousand men. He landed on the Elk River, about fifty miles from Philadelphia, and commenced marching toward that city. Congress was in session at Philadelphia, and Washington wanted to save the city if he could. He had only eight thousand men fit for service, but with these he met the British at Brandy-

wine. The Americans were defeated. Congress had to leave Philadelphia. Howe entered the city in triumph.

2. Among those who fought bravely at Brandywine was La Fayette [*lah fa-et'*]. This young French noble had left his home and friends, and come over to help the Americans fight for freedom. His family objected to his coming. But La Fayette, without their knowledge, bought a vessel, and with a few noble hearts like himself succeeded in reaching America. Congress made him a general, and he became the bosom friend of Washington.

3. **Washington's Defeat at Germantown.**— The British were now in pleasant quarters in and around Philadelphia. A large division was stationed at Germantown, six miles from the city. This force Washington tried to surprise, October 4th, 1777. At first victory inclined to the Americans. But some of the men failed to obey orders, and a thick fog arose, which gave the British a chance to rally. The Americans were defeated with considerable loss. Cold weather soon set in, and Washington led his men into winter-quarters at Valley Forge, about twenty miles from Philadelphia.

4. An amusing incident took place at the battle of Germantown. General Greene, who commanded one division of the Americans, had by his side a major, who wore his hair down his back in a cue. While the firing was at its height, a bullet carried off the major's cue. "Don't be in a hurry, major," said Greene; "just get down and pick up your cue." The major very coolly did so. Presently another ball came along, and cut off one of General Greene's curls. "Now, general," said the major, "it's your turn. Just dismount and get your curl." But the general preferred letting his curl go.

5. Washington's men suffered intensely at **Valley**

Forge. A great part of them could not move out of their huts for want of clothes. Many had no shoes. Some were without blankets, and had to rest at night in their rags on the bare frozen ground. Sickness set in. Food could hardly be obtained. Most of the people in the neighborhood were tories, who sold their produce to the British at high prices. Washington had no gold or silver, and the paper money issued by Congress was worth but little. This was indeed a trying hour.

6. There were some kind hearts, however, that felt for the poor American soldiers. One devoted woman, Mary Knight, used to cook provisions for them, and carry them herself to the camp in the depth of winter, disguised as a market-woman, that she might pass the British outposts. Her brother was a general in the American army. The British set a price upon his head; but this brave woman saved him by heading him up in an empty cider hogshead in the cellar, and feeding him through the bung-hole. He stayed there three days, and the British searched the house four times for him without success.

7. While things looked thus gloomy, a joyful piece of news reached the camp. It was that France had acknowledged the independence of the United States, and would help them against England. This was brought about chiefly through the efforts of **Benjamin Franklin.** This great man was the son of a candle-maker. In his youth, his father employed him in cutting wicks and filling candle-molds. But he longed for knowledge. He would even deny himself sleep, that he might read and study. After learning the art of printing, he left his home and set out to make his fortune.

8. Franklin found himself in Philadelphia with a single dollar in his pocket. For a time he had hard

work to get along. But he was very frugal. He lived on gruel; and, when his landlady informed him she could not afford to board him any longer at the price he was paying, he told her she must make the gruel thinner. Franklin became a great writer and philosopher. His name was honored in Europe, and in his own country he was revered as a true-hearted patriot.

LESSON XXXVII.

MONMOUTH.—WYOMING.—MOVEMENTS IN THE SOUTH.

1. **Battle of Monmouth.**—In the spring of 1778, Howe returned to England, and General Clinton took command of the British forces. Clinton had orders to evacuate Philadelphia and lead his men to New York. To do this, he had to cross New Jersey. Washington was soon in pursuit. His army was not half so large as Clinton's, and most of his officers thought it would be imprudent to risk an engagement. Washington thought otherwise; and at Monmouth, New Jersey, he gave battle to Clinton.

2. General Lee was to commence the attack with an advanced division. What was Washington's dismay, when, on coming up with the main force, he found this division retreating without having struck a blow! He at once stopped them, and posted his men in such a way that the British were checked. The action continued till night, with advantage to the Americans. They rested on their arms, expecting to renew the battle in the morning. Washington slept on the field in his cloak. But, when

day dawned, no British were to be seen. They had silently departed for New York.

3. On the day of the battle the heat was intense. Many of the British soldiers died from its effects. When Monmouth is mentioned, the name of Molly Pitcher must not be forgotten. Her husband served at one of the American cannon. While she was bringing him water from a spring, a ball struck him, and he fell. There was no one to manage his gun. Springing forward, she took his place, and performed her duty in the most heroic manner. Washington appointed her a sergeant in the army, and she was afterward well known as "Captain Molly."

4. **Wyoming Massacre.**—The Indians, bribed by the British, had from time to time during the war given trouble on the frontier. In the summer of 1778, in company with a band of tories, they made a descent

MONUMENT AT WYOMING, COMMEMORATING THE MASSACRE.

on Wy-o′ming. This was a flourishing settlement in a lovely valley in Pennsylvania. Most of the men were away, fighting for their country. Those who remained,

hearing of their danger, quickly armed themselves, and assembled in a fort with the women and children. When the tories and Indians were near the fort, a small force sallied forth to meet them, but it was beaten back and fled in confusion. Those who were made prisoners were put to death with horrible tortures.

5. The next day the enemy surrounded the fort. After holding out till many of his men had fallen, the commander surrendered on the promise that those within should be spared and their property protected. But the Indians soon set restraint at defiance, burning and plundering far and near. The people of the neighborhood were obliged to flee over the mountains, to the nearest settlements. Many perished from exposure and starvation. The whole valley was desolate.

6. **Fall of Savannah and Charleston.**—Late in the year 1778, the British commenced operations in the south. They took Savannah (see map, p. 73), and overran the eastern part of Georgia, robbing the whig families, and spreading terror in their path. A French fleet containing a body of troops having arrived off the coast, General Lincoln hastened to join them in attacking Savannah. The French would not wait to besiege the city; so it was resolved to storm it. Though the attack was bravely made, the Americans and French were driven back with loss. The brave Jasper lost his life in trying to save the flag of his regiment.

7. The patriots of the south suffered a still more serious reverse the next year. A strong force of British collected around Charleston, which was defended by General Lincoln, with a large army. The Americans held out till their houses were nearly battered down by the British cannon, but were obliged to yield at last. Five thousand

men, with stores and artillery, thus fell into the hands of the enemy.

8. One of the British posts in Georgia was held by a Captain French, with forty men and five vessels. Colonel White, with four men, set out to capture them. Near the British post they kindled a number of fires, as if a large camp were there, and then, quickly riding round, gave various orders in a loud tone of voice, as if they were directing the movements of a large army. They completely deceived Captain French, who thought there was no use of attempting to resist such a host, and surrendered his men and vessels.

9. But how were the five men to secure their prisoners? There was danger that the latter would discover the artifice, and overwhelm them with numbers. So Colonel White told them that his men were very angry at the British on account of their outrages, and that they had better keep out of sight. He would send them ahead with three or four of his men as guides, while he remained to restrain his army. Then, hastening off, he collected the militia of the neighborhood, who soon overtook the others, and led the British in triumph to the nearest American post.

LESSON XXXVIII.

PAUL JONES.—FRANCIS MARION.

1. **On the ocean,** the United States could do but little against the great navy of England. Many fast-sailing little vessels, however, were armed and sent out by private persons. They were called *privateers.* Cruising wherever there was a chance of taking a prize, they

were of great service in cutting off English merchant-vessels, capturing stores, etc. Congress managed from time to time to procure a few vessels. These were intrusted to skilful commanders, who gained some important victories. Among the most famous of these commanders was Paul Jones.

2. **Paul Jones** was the son of a Scottish gardener. From early boyhood he was fond of the sea. After making various voyages, he settled in Virginia. When the Revolution broke out, he walked to Philadelphia and offered his services to Congress. They were accepted, and he had the honor of hoisting the first flag that ever floated over an American man-of-war. It was of yellow silk, and bore the device of a pine-tree and a rattlesnake, with the words "*Don't tread on me.*" Jones was soon off to Nova Scotia, running into the harbors, destroying the shipping, and capturing prizes.

3. Jones afterward cruised about the English coasts, to repay the enemy for their outrages in American ports. He was so successful in his descents that his very name became a terror. At one point of the coast, when his dreaded vessel was seen in the offing, the minister went down with his congregation to the shore, and made a strange but fervent prayer for deliverance. Soon afterward the wind rose, white caps appeared on the sea, and Jones had to change his course,—owing, as the people believed, to their minister's prayer.

4. Jones's most famous battle was with the British frigate Serapis (September, 1779). After one of the most terrible actions ever fought, the British struck their colors. Finding his vessel sinking, Jones took his men on board of the Serapis. She was on fire, but he succeeded in saving her. The captain of the Serapis was made a knight

by the King for his bravery in this battle. "Well, he deserved it," said Paul Jones; "and, if I fall in with him again, I'll make a lord of him."

5. During the winter of 1778–9, General Putnam was stationed with some troops in Connecticut. Early one morning, while shaving, he saw in the looking-glass a body of red-coats coming up the road. Throwing down his razor, he buckled on his sword, mounted his horse, and roused his men. But they were too few to oppose the enemy, and the order was given to retreat.

6. The soldiers fled in different directions. Putnam found himself, hotly pursued by some dragoons, at the top of a steep descent, consisting of about a hundred steps, cut in the rock for the convenience of those who attended church on the hill. Down this perilous descent he dashed, turning to wave defiance at the dragoons, who durst not follow. They fired at him, but he escaped with a bullet through his hat.

7. **The Conflict in the South.**—We left the British in possession of Savannah and Charleston. Sending out parties, they soon overran the whole of South Carolina. The people were required to acknowledge the King's authority. But even those who did so were often robbed and driven from their homes. Such outrages roused many of the brave people of Carolina. They formed small parties, took to the swamps and woods, and resolved to fight till their country was free. Wherever a British detachment was to be cut off, or a band of tories to be dispersed, they appeared when least expected. They often went into battle with only three charges of powder apiece. Some were without guns, and would have to wait for those of their companions who fell.

8. No braver men ever lived than the leaders of these

parties. Among them were Sumter, called from his courage "the Carolina Game-cock," and Marion, the cunning "Swamp Fox." Marion was one of the heroes of the palmetto fort. He was also in Charleston under Lincoln, and escaped being taken by a singular accident. Shortly after the enemy appeared, he was dining with some friends, who insisted on his drinking with them to excess. To avoid doing so, he jumped to the street from the second-story window, and broke his ankle. Unfit for duty, he was conveyed from the city by a road that was still open, and thus escaped to serve his country.

9. Marion and his men were the terror of the British and tories. They seemed to rest neither day nor night. Making their home in forests which the enemy could not penetrate, they lived on what scanty food they could there procure. A British officer once visited Marion, to arrange for an exchange of prisoners. He was invited to stay to dinner, and presently a few roasted sweet potatoes were brought in on a shingle. The officer could hardly believe that this was all his dreaded enemy had to live on. On his return, he resigned his commission in the British army, saying that such men could not be subdued.

10. The high-souled women of Carolina did their part also. They tried to provide their brave defenders with clothes, and keep them informed of the enemy's movements. To save a party of whigs, a Miss Moore, only fifteen years old, set out in a boat at night, with her little brother and a female friend, and, after rowing for miles at the risk of her life, delivered her message and returned. In one district, a company of young women went round in harvest-time to the different farms, and, wherever they found that the owner was away, fighting for his country, they cut and garnered his grain.

LESSON XXXIX.

HANGING ROCK.—CAMDEN.—ARNOLD'S TREASON.

1. **Marion and his men** met with many an adventure. The famous leader was once nearly surrounded in a corn-field by British dragoons. His only chance of escape lay in leaping a fence seven feet high, with a wide ditch beyond it. The dragoons thought they had caught the Swamp Fox at last. What was their surprise, when his horse made the leap in gallant style, cleared fence and ditch, and bore his master safely off into an adjoining thicket!

2. Among Marion's bravest followers were Colonel Horry and Captain Baxter. In one of their battles, Baxter cried out, "I am wounded, colonel." "No matter, Baxter," answered Horry; "stand to your post." "But I can't stand," said Baxter; "I am wounded a second time." "Lie down, then, captain, but quit not your post." "They have shot me again," cried Baxter; "and, if I stay here any longer, I shall be shot to pieces." "Well, Baxter, be it so, but stir not," was Horry's reply:—and the order was obeyed, though the wounded man was shot a fourth time during the battle.

3. At last Congress sent an army to the south, under General Gates. Gates marched toward Camden, one of the chief posts of the British. As he approached, the hopes of the patriots revived. A number of farmers took the field, and defeated a large detachment of the enemy at Hanging Rock.

4. The powder used by the Americans in this battle had been stored in a house occupied by one of the patriots, with his wife and mother-in-law. Shortly before the

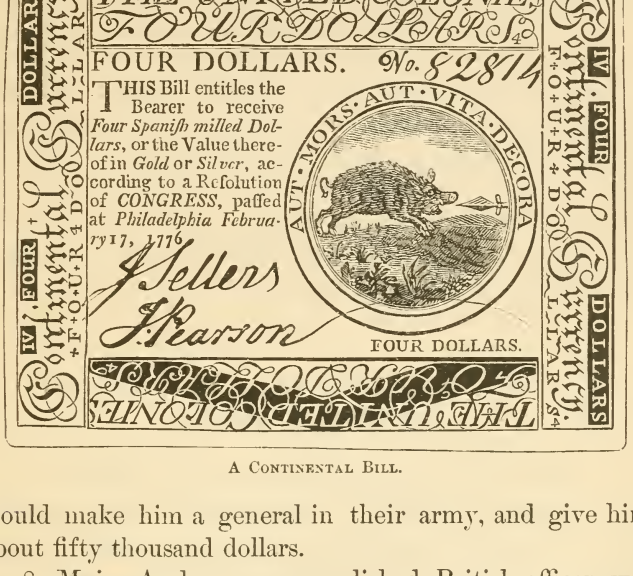
battle, a party of British surrounded the house, and commenced attacking it. The two women loaded guns, while the man fired them, with such rapidity that the British thought a large body of troops was posted there, and gave up the attack. Thus the powder was saved.

5. **Defeat of Gates at Camden.**—On the 15th of August, 1780, Gates drew up his men, and late at night set out for Camden to surprise the enemy. Strangely enough, the British, without knowing of this movement, were on the march to surprise Gates. The two armies met and joined battle. Early in the engagement, some of the Americans gave way, and the result was a total defeat. Great quantities of stores were taken by the British. Gates could not rally his men. His army was completely broken up. Shortly after this, Congress removed Gates from the command of the southern army, and appointed General Greene in his stead.

6. The whole state was now at the mercy of the English. Congress wanted to send an army into the field, but could not do so for want of funds. They had kept issuing paper money; and now there was so much of it out that people lost faith in its value, and passed it for very little. It took six hundred dollars of it to buy a pair of boots. The pay of an officer would hardly keep his horse in oats. It is not strange that Congress found it difficult to raise soldiers.

7. **The Traitor Arnold.**—Meanwhile, Washington's army in the north was in so wretched a state that he could do nothing. Every thing looked gloomy; and, to make matters worse, a treacherous blow was just at this time aimed at the patriot cause. Arnold, whose bravery at Quebec and Stillwater you have read of, became a traitor. He was in command of a strong fortress that had

been built by the Americans at West Point. This post he offered to betray to the British, on condition that they



A Continental Bill.

would make him a general in their army, and give him about fifty thousand dollars.

8. Major Andre, an accomplished British officer, was sent up from New York to arrange the terms with Arnold. He came within the American lines, and, having agreed with the traitor and received the necessary papers, set out on his return. When he had almost reached the British outposts, he was stopped by three American militia-men. On examining him, they found the papers in his stockings. Refusing an offer of ten thousand guineas to let him go, these honest patriots took their prisoner to the nearest American post. After a fair trial, he was hanged as a spy.

9. Arnold heard of Andre's capture in time to escape

to a British vessel. Receiving his promised rank in the British army, he afterward showed his hatred of the patriots by ravaging different parts of the country. But British as well as Americans despised him.

10. Washington was very anxious to capture the traitor, and a plan was formed for that purpose. A Virginian pretended to desert, and joined Arnold's legion. The traitor's quarters were then in New York, near the Hudson River; and the plan was to seize him, gag him, and take him in a boat across to New Jersey. Before it could be done, Arnold changed his quarters. He was afterward sent to lay waste portions of Virginia, and there La Fayette tried to capture him, but without success.

LESSON XL.

THE SOUTHERN CAMPAIGN OF 1780-'81.

1. **Battle of King's Mountain.**—After his victory at Camden, Cornwallis proceeded to reduce North Carolina. He sent a detachment to the mountains, to enroll the tories and frighten the whigs. But the whig mountaineers were not easily frightened. They made powder for themselves, using the nitre they found in the caverns, and charcoal burned on their own hearths. Giving chase to the British detachment mentioned above, they overtook it at King's Mountain, and made the whole party prisoners with but little loss.

2. **Cowpens.**—Greene, on assuming command of the southern army, stationed detachments at several important points. One of these, under General Morgan, was attacked at Cowpens by Tarle'ton, a British officer

famous for his courage and cruelty. Tarleton's men charged with their usual fierceness, but were received by Morgan's riflemen so firmly that they wavered. At this crisis, a charge from Colonel Washington's cavalry decided the day. The British were defeated, with the loss of many men and much of their baggage.

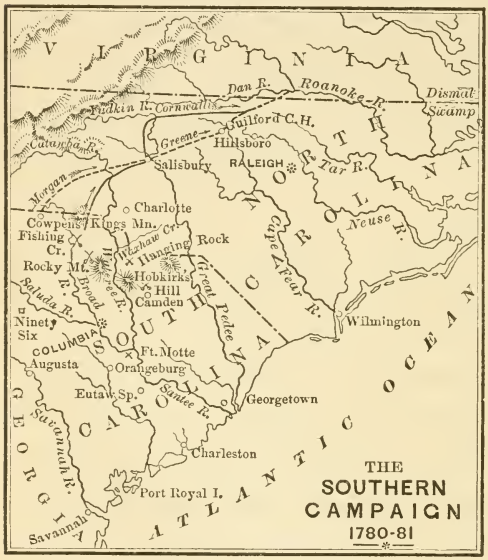
3. As Colonel Washington was charging at full speed in this battle, he encountered Tarleton. Both were good swordsmen, but Tarleton was wounded, and had to turn and flee. Soon after this, in a gay company, Tarleton sneered at the American officers, and said above all he should like to see that famous hero, Colonel Washington. "You might have done so, colonel," answered a whig lady who was present, "if you had only looked behind you at the battle of Cowpens."

4. Colonel Washington was as good at stratagem as he was brave. He once appeared before a British redoubt, which was too strong to be taken without artillery. Having no cannon, he cut a pine log, and mounted it on wheels so as to resemble one. Parading this in front of his force, he summoned the British to surrender. The stratagem succeeded. Frightened by Colonel Washington's pine log, they laid down their arms without delay.

5. **Morgan and Greene's Retreat.**—Tarleton's defeat at Cowpens made Cornwallis very angry. Setting out at once in pursuit of Morgan, he reached the Catawba River just two hours after the Americans had crossed it. Night was near at hand, and he determined to wait where he was till morning. During the night a rain set in, and swelled the river so that for three days it was impassable. Meanwhile, Greene had hastened to help Morgan conduct the retreat. When near the army, he entered an inn, drenched with rain and almost in despair. His kind

hostess, after preparing his dinner, brought him all her money, and told him to devote it to the cause of freedom.

6. Greene continued the retreat as rapidly as possible, and crossed the Yadkin. Before the British arrived, another heavy rain commenced, and the river became impassable. Crossing higher up, Cornwallis pressed on to intercept the Americans before they reached the Dan. But he did not succeed. The Americans, almost sinking with fatigue, reached the ford first, and got across in safety. Here Cornwallis gave up the pursuit. We can hardly form an idea of the hardships suffered by the Americans in this retreat. Their shoes and clothes were worn out. During the whole time, they had eaten but one meal a day, and had slept in the open air.



7. **Guilford Court-House.**—As soon as his men were rested, Greene again took the field. He followed the enemy into North Carolina, and gave them battle at

Guilford Court-House. The British had the better in this engagement. But their victory was so dearly bought that Cornwallis thought it prudent to fall back. He soon after took command of the detachment that had been sent out under Arnold to ravage Virginia. This was pleasant work for Arnold, Tarleton, and Cornwallis. They managed to destroy ten million dollars' worth of property in the spring and summer of 1781. After this, Cornwallis collected his forces, and fortified himself at Yorktown, Virginia.

8. Meanwhile, Marion and Lee were busy in Carolina. They took one British post after another. The patriotism of Mrs. Motte, a noble whig lady, is worthy of being remembered. A party of British had seized her house. Marion and Lee were besieging it, when they heard that a large British army was but a few miles off. Rather than have them give up the attack, Mrs. Motte insisted on their setting fire to her fine house, to dislodge the enemy. It was done; and the British had to hang out a white flag as a signal of surrender.

9. Among other important posts, Georgetown (see map, p. 128) fell before Marion and Lee. In the attack on this place, the Americans had driven the enemy from an enclosure, and the latter advanced to recover it. "Rush on!" said the British leader; "they are only worthless militia, and have no bayonets." Sergeant Ord immediately placed himself in the gate of the enclosure. As the British came up, he struck down one after another with his sword, crying, "Any bayonets here? None at all, to be sure." The British recoiled before his single arm, and gave up the attack.

LESSON XLI.

EUTAW.—YORKTOWN.—CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION.

1. **Battle of Eutaw Springs.**—After the battle of Guilford Court-House, Greene marched into South Carolina, against the army which Cornwallis had left there to keep the patriots in check. He met with a reverse at Hobkirk's Hill, but, with the aid of Marion, Lee, Sumter, and Pickens, most of the state was soon recovered from the British. Greene at last gave battle to the main body of the enemy at Eutaw Springs. Both parties fought with desperate courage.

2. During the battle, a party of British retired into a brick dwelling, and closed the doors so quickly as to shut out one of their own officers. As the Americans came up to the attack, he pompously presented himself to their colonel, enumerating all his titles. "Sir, I am deputy adjutant-general of the British army, secretary of the commander, captain of the 52nd regiment—" "Enough," interrupted the colonel; "you are just the man I was looking for. I'll take good care of you;" and holding his prisoner between himself and the British guns, he screened his person till he had accomplished what he wanted, and retired out of danger.

3. The British gave way before the steady courage of Greene's men. The latter, thinking the battle was over, fell upon the captured stores. Seeing them thus employed, the enemy rallied and renewed the attack. The Americans were taken by surprise, but Greene succeeded in drawing off his men with some loss. The British had suffered so much, that the next day their commander destroyed his stores and returned to Charleston.

4. **Siege of Yorktown.**—A French fleet, sent over to aid the Americans, arrived off the coast of Virginia in the summer of 1781. Washington had been threatening the British army in New York. Now, however, he marched rapidly to the south, to join the French in surrounding Cornwallis. General Clinton, who commanded in New York, did not discover this movement till it was too late to prevent it. La Fayette's division was already in Virginia. Toward the close of September, the French and American armies invested Yorktown, and a heavy fire was opened from their batteries.

5. Breaches were soon made in the British works. Cornwallis tried a sally, but was driven back into his fortifications. He then attempted to convey his men by night across the York River, with the intention of forcing his way through the French lines at the opposite point, and hastening to join Clinton at New York. One division crossed the river in safety; but a furious storm set in, and the rest were unable to join them. Those who had landed, after a severe drenching, were brought back in the morning, and no further efforts to escape were made.

6. Cornwallis's only hope now lay in aid from Clinton. He held out as long as he could; but the allied armies brought their batteries closer and closer, and on the 19th of October he found it necessary to surrender. Over

seven thousand British soldiers laid down their arms. Washington generously tried to avoid wounding the feelings of the enemy. Before they appeared on the field, he rode up to his men, as they were drawn up in line, and said: "My boys, let there be no insults over a conquered foe. When they lay down their arms, don't huzzah. Posterity will huzzah for you." That same day, Clinton set out to relieve Cornwallis, with a strong force of ships and men. Learning that he was too late, when off the coast of Virginia, he sailed back to New York.

7. The news of **the surrender of Cornwallis** was everywhere hailed with delight. The old state-house bell at Philadelphia rang to announce the joyful tidings. Many were so overcome that they could only weep. The aged door-keeper of Congress died from excess of joy. Washington did not forget to ascribe his success to a merciful Providence; and the troops united in returning thanks to the God of battles.

8. **Peace.**—The surrender of Cornwallis put an end to the Revolutionary War. The King and Parliament found it was useless to try to conquer men who would fight in rags, and on one poor meal a day, rather than lose their freedom. Commissioners from both countries met at Paris. The independence of the United States was acknowledged by Great Britain, and peace was established. The British army received orders to evacuate New York, and this was done on the 25th of November, 1783. "Evacuation day" is still kept in New York.

9. While the American army was lying unemployed, a new danger arose. Both officers and men complained loudly of Congress for not paying them according to agreement. They even went so far as to threaten violence, and offered to make Washington a king. Grieved

at the display of such a spirit, Washington nobly rejected their offer; he dissuaded them from violence, and urged Congress to make provision for meeting their demands.

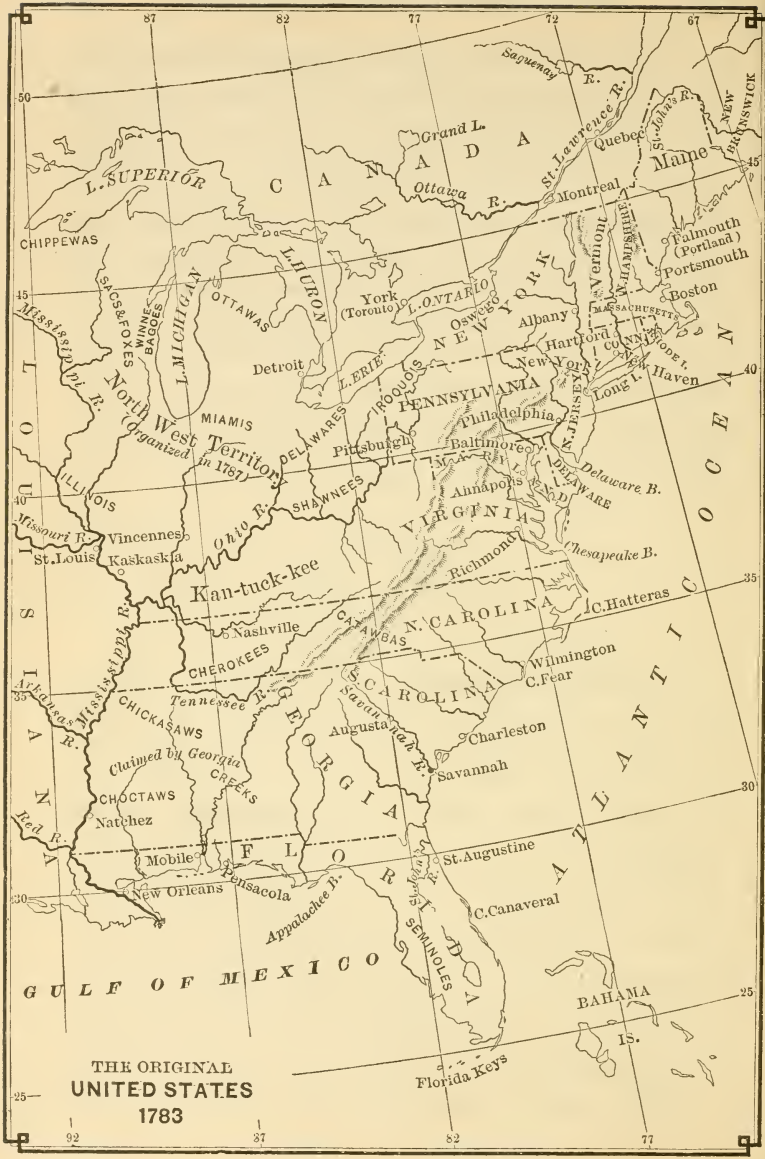
10. **Disbanding the Army.**—On the establishment of peace, the army, through Washington's efforts, was quietly disbanded. Many a poor soldier left for home without a penny in his pocket. In December, 1783, Washington took leave of his officers. It was hard for those to part, who had labored and suffered so long together. With a full heart, one after another shook the hand of his revered commander. Then, surrendering his commission to Congress, the great leader of the Revolution retired to private life at Mount Vernon, on the bank of the Potomac (see map, p. 78).

LESSON XLII.

FORMATION OF A CONSTITUTION.

1. **Political Troubles.**—Shortly after the surrender of Cornwallis, Washington, accompanied by La Fayette and other officers, went to visit his mother. Six years had passed since they had met, and now he came the nation's idol. While a great procession paraded through the place in honor of the illustrious visitors, Mrs. Washington remained quietly at home, preparing her yarn. "I am glad to see you, George," were her first words when Washington entered her house; "you have altered considerably." The next day La Fayette called on her, and spoke in glowing terms of her son's greatness. "I am not surprised," she answered, "for George always was a good boy."

2. The war had ceased. The United States were free.


THE ORIGINAL
UNITED STATES
1783
L. SUPERIOR
CANADA
Grand L.
Saguenay R.
St. Lawrence R.
Quebec
St. John R.
NEW BRUNSWICK
Maine
Ottawa R.
Montreal
Vermont
NEW HAMPSHIRE
Falmouth (Portland)
Portsmouth
Boston
MASSACHUSETTS
CHIPPEWAS
L. HURON
L. MICHIGAN
OTTAWAS
SACS & FOXES
WINNEBAGOES
York (Toronto)
L. ONTARIO
Oswego
Albany
Hartford
CONNECT.
New Haven
Long I.
NEW YORK
Detroit
L. ERIE
IROQUOIS
PENNSYLVANIA
Philadelphia
N. JERSEY
DELAWARE
Delaware B.
Mississippi R.
North West Territory (Organized in 1787)
MIAMIS
DELAWARES
Pittsburgh
Baltimore
Annapolis
MARYLAND
ILLINOIS
SHAWNEES
Ohio R.
VIRGINIA
Missouri R.
Vincennes
St. Louis
Kaskaskia
Chesapeake B.
Richmond
Kan-tuck-kee
C. Hatteras
Nashville
CATAWBAS
N. CAROLINA
Wilmington
C. Fear
CHEROKEES
Arkansas R.
Mississippi R.
Tennessee R.
CHICKASAWS
S. CAROLINA
Savannah R.
Charleston
Augusta
Claimed by Georgia
CREEKS
Savannah
CHOCTAWS
Natchez
Red R.
GEORGIA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Mobile
FLORIDA
St. Augustine
New Orleans
Pensacola
Appalache B.
St. Johns R.
SEMINOLES
C. Canaveral
GULF OF MEXICO
BAHAMA
IS.
Florida Keys
92
87
82
77
72
67
50
45
40
35
30
25

But they were still surrounded with great difficulties. They owed an immense debt to foreign governments, as well as to their own soldiers and officers. How was this to be paid? Congress had no money, and no power to raise any from the different states, which considered themselves independent, and looked with jealousy on each other and on the general government. England, too, complained that her merchants could not collect what was owed to them in America. It seemed at one time as if the war would be renewed.

3. The people continued to suffer. All kinds of business were dull. The taxes laid in some of the states, though light in themselves, were looked upon as a burden, because money was so scarce. In Massachusetts, a number of people rose in arms and resisted the government. Shays, who had been a captain in the Revolution, took command of them, and the movement was called Shays' Rebellion. For a time they gave some trouble; but the militia were called out, and Shays and his men found it best to submit. The ringleaders came near being hanged, but were finally let off.

4. **Formation of a Constitution.**—It was clear that some stronger government was needed. Accordingly, a meeting of delegates from each state was called, for the purpose of drawing up a constitution. In May, 1787, the convention met at the same old state-house in Philadelphia in which the Declaration of Independence had been signed. It contained the wisest men in the country. Washington was elected its president.

5. Different points were sharply discussed by the members. It was hard to please all. At one time it seemed as if they would be unable to agree on a constitution. At length Benjamin Franklin, now an old man, but as firm

a friend of his country as ever, proposed that the clergy of the city should be invited to offer prayer for divine guidance every morning before they began their labors. It was done. Greater harmony then prevailed. One gave up one point, and another another. At last our glorious constitution was completed.

6. The constitution was then submitted to the different states. Some found fault with it; but Alexander Hamilton, of New York, and James Madison, of Virginia, defended it from all attacks. It was soon ratified by most of the states. Within three years all had accepted it. It is still (with certain amendments since made) the law of the land.

7. According to **the constitution of the United States,** all laws for the country at large have to be passed by two houses. They are called the Senate and the House of Representatives. Together they are known as the Congress of the United States. They meet once every year. The senators are elected by the legislatures of the different states; the representatives, by the people. The laws are interpreted by Judges, who form what is called the Supreme Court of the United States. The laws are executed by a President, chosen once in four years by electors who are themselves chosen by the people.

8. The President can *veto* a law passed by Congress. It is then null, unless two-thirds of both houses again vote for it. The President is commander-in-chief of the army and navy. He appoints various officers and makes treaties, subject to the approval of the senate. At the same time with the President, a Vice-president is elected, who, if the President dies or is disabled, takes his place. Each state is independent and supreme in matters that concern itself alone. It is only in affairs connected with

the country at large that the general government has power.

9. Under the new constitution, Washington was elected President. All looked to him as the only one that could rescue the country from the dangers that threatened it. Again, at his country's call, he left his quiet home at Mount Vernon. His journey to New York showed how the people loved him. Crowds flocked about him, delighting to do him honor. On the 30th of April, 1789, he took the oath of office and became the first President of the United States.

LESSON XLIII.

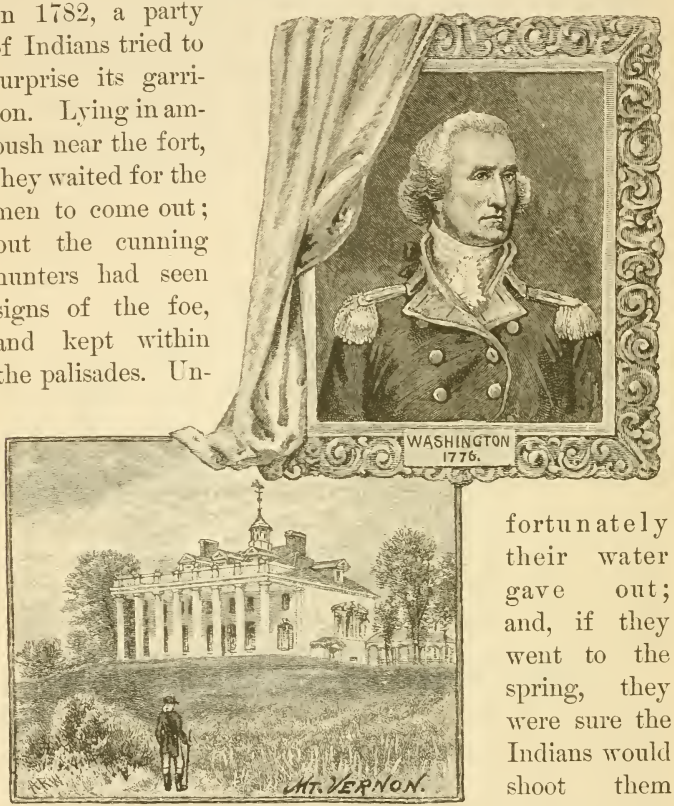
WASHINGTON'S TWO TERMS.

1. **The First President.**—The first thing to be done was to find some way of paying the public debt. This was a hard task, but it was intrusted to a man of genius, Alexander Hamilton. Hamilton gave all the powers of his great mind to the subject. He devised means for gradually meeting a great part of the debt. By his advice, Congress chartered a United States Bank with a large capital. People once more began to put faith in the government, and business soon became brisk.

2. **Indian Wars.**—The next difficulty was with the Indians in the west. Even before the Revolution, some adventurous hunters had pushed out from Virginia and Carolina beyond the mountains, and made homes for themselves in the wilderness. The famous Daniel Boone, with five companions, had settled in what is now Kentucky. His wife and daughter were the first white women that set foot on the bank of the Kentucky

River. Many a stirring adventure had Boone and such as he,—many a hair-breadth escape from the wild beasts, and the wilder Red Men, of the forest!

3. One of these pioneer posts was called Bryan Station. In 1782, a party of Indians tried to surprise its garrison. Lying in ambush near the fort, they waited for the men to come out; but the cunning hunters had seen signs of the foe, and kept within the palisades. Unfortunately their water gave out; and, if they went to the spring, they were sure the Indians would shoot them down and make a rush for the fort. At this crisis, the brave women at the post offered to bring the water. Going carelessly past the thicket in which the savages lay concealed, they



filled their pails and returned. Five hundred rifles were aimed at them, but not one was fired. The Indians waited for the men, but in vain; and the fort was saved.

4. As the settlements in the west increased, Congress tried to satisfy the Indians by buying their lands. There were some, however, north of the Ohio River, in what is now the state of Indiana, that would not join in the sale. They threatened war, and Congress had to send an army under General Harmer to subdue them. Harmer laid waste their fields. But, while he was pursuing the Indians who had fled before him, one division of his army was defeated, and the other was led into an ambuscade and cut to pieces.

5. General St. Clair, an experienced officer, was then sent against the Indians. Little Turtle was their leading spirit. He was a famous chief, whose nose and ears were bright with silver rings. He cunningly planned a surprise. One morning about daylight, when near the Indian camp, the invading army was suddenly attacked. In spite of St. Clair's efforts and the bravery of his officers, his men were thrown into confusion. Many were killed, and the battle ended in a total rout.

6. A third army was then sent out, and this time Washington intrusted the command to General Wayne. Wayne had distinguished himself in the Revolution. His fierce charges on the enemy had gained for him among the soldiers the nickname of "mad Anthony." Advancing cautiously into the country of the Indians, Wayne defeated them, and desolated their villages for a distance of fifty miles. They were completely humbled. A treaty was signed, and for years the frontier was secure. Wayne is said to have told the Indians that, if they ever broke this treaty, he would rise from the grave to fight them.

7. When Washington's four years were about to expire, he was elected for a second term. A party had arisen which opposed the measures of the President, and complained that he had too much power. But the mass of the people still looked to Washington as the father of his country.

8. Early in **Washington's second term,** he was troubled with what was called the Whiskey Rebellion. A tax had been laid on all whiskey that was distilled. Some people in western Pennsylvania said they would not pay this tax. Assembling under a man who took the name of Tom the Tinker, they drove out the collector and defied the government. It was not till Washington sent a large body of soldiers against them that they returned to reason.

9. There were some troubles also with France and England; but Washington met them all with wisdom. Some wanted him to aid the French people, who had driven out their King. Others said he ought to insist on England's yielding certain points that were in dispute. But Washington prudently avoided war. Meanwhile the country throve. It has gone on increasing in strength. The west has become rapidly settled. New states have from time to time been formed. A list of these, with the date of their admission into the Union, will be given hereafter.

LESSON XLIV.

JOHN ADAMS.—THOMAS JEFFERSON.

1. **Adams's Administration.** — Washington would not serve a third term, and John Adams was elect-

ed to succeed him as President. Adams was one of the greatest of our early statesmen. During the Revolution, he went to France as ambassador. The vessel that took him over gave battle to a British man-of-war, Mr. Adams having first promised that he would stay in the cabin during the action. For some time he kept his word, but at last he could stand it no longer. Seizing a musket, he rushed on deck, and the captain soon found him loading and firing with the rest. The captain reminded him of his promise and ordered him below. Mr. Adams refused to go; and the captain had to carry him down by force.

2. A difficulty with the French arose in Adams's term. They had an unpleasant way of seizing American vessels. President Adams determined to put a stop to this, and made ready for war. Several actions took place between French and American vessels in consequence of these outrages. In one of these, a French frigate was taken by the Constellation. Lieutenant Rodgers was sent on board with twelve men, to take command of the prize and transfer her crew to the Constellation.

3. Before this could be done, a storm separated the two vessels. Rodgers and his twelve men were now in great danger. There were nearly two hundred French sailors on board of the prize, and they might rise and retake the vessel. To guard against this, Rodgers at once ordered all the prisoners below, and placed guards to shoot down any that should come on deck. After three days of fearful anxiety, during which he did not sleep a wink, he succeeded in getting his prize safe into port.

4. Toward the close of the year 1799, the whole nation was plunged in grief by the news that their beloved Washington was no more. He died of an acute disease, brought on by exposure to a slight rain. As his end ap-

proached, he said to his physician, "I am not afraid to die." He felt that he had served his country faithfully, and that country will never forget his services.

5. **The New Capital.**—In 1800, Congress met for the first time at the city of Washington, which has ever since been the capital of the United States. Washington lies on the Potomac River, in a small tract called the District of Columbia. (See map, p. 185.) This tract was presented to the general government by Maryland. It was at first a wilderness, through which one might travel for miles without meeting a human being. But it has changed wonderfully since then. Thriving farms and pleasant country-seats now dot its surface. Washington has become a large city, and is adorned with fine public buildings. Among these are the President's residence, which you often hear called "the White House," and the Capitol, a large building in which Congress meets.

6. After John Adams had served four years (1797–1801), **Thomas Jefferson** became President. It was he that drew up the Declaration of Independence. One of the most important events during his term of office was the purchase of Louisiana from the French. Napoleon, then at the head of affairs in France, at first intended to plant a large colony there. But, a quarrel breaking out with England, he needed all the men and money he could raise. So he sold Louisiana to the United States for fifteen millions of dollars, part of which was to be paid to those Americans whose property had been seized by French cruisers upon the ocean.

7. **Tripolitan War.**—In the north of Africa, on the Mediterranean Sea, lie what are called the Barbary States. For a long time they were the home of pirates, who used to scour the sea, capture merchant-vessels, and

sell their crews into slavery. For a while the United States paid a yearly tribute to secure its vessels from these outrages. But at last the pirates became so insolent that a fleet was sent out under Commodore Preble to punish them.

8. While reconnoitring the harbor of Trip'o-li, the Philadelphia, one of the American vessels, struck on a rock. She was immediately taken by the Tripolitans. But Lieutenant De-ca'tur, one of the bravest officers in the service, resolved they should not long enjoy their triumph. One evening, in a little vessel disguised as a coaster, he boldly sailed up to the Philadelphia, and asked permission to moor his boat beside her. Before the Tripolitans found out what was going on, he and his men were on board. After driving off the pirates, they set the ship on fire and made good their retreat.

9. Soon after this, the Americans attacked the Tripolitan fleet and bombarded the city. The gallant Decatur again fought like a lion. In boarding one of the enemy's boats, he was met by the captain, and a desperate struggle ensued. While they were thus engaged, another Tripolitan rushed up with drawn sword and was about to despatch Decatur, when a gallant sailor saved his life by interposing his person and receiving the blow himself. After being quite severely handled, the bashaw of Tripoli thought it best to come to terms. For some years after this, the American flag was treated with respect.

LESSON XLV.

JEFFERSON'S SECOND TERM.—JAMES MADISON.

1. **Aaron Burr.**—On the 4th of March, 1805, Jefferson entered on his second term. Aaron Burr, who had been Vice-president, was not re-elected. Burr was disappointed, and, journeying through the west, he gave out that he was engaged in some great scheme, and tried to induce the leading men to join him. What his scheme was, never was known. It is thought that he proposed separating the west from the rest of the Union and placing himself at its head.

2. Hearing that he had enlisted several thousand men in his enterprise, the President in 1807 had Burr arrested on a charge of treason. He was committed to jail; and this great man slept for a time in a blanket on the floor among the common criminals. He was tried and acquitted. But people generally believed him guilty; and, though he was one of the best orators and lawyers in the country, he was shunned by all.

3. **West of the Rocky Mountains,** on the Pacific, lay a Province of Mexico called California. North of this was an extensive tract, now forming the state of Oregon and the territory of Washington. Little or nothing was known of this region; and, during Jefferson's term, a party of soldiers and hunters was sent out to explore it. They were gone two years, and met with many adventures. They travelled six thousand miles, and thoroughly explored the valley of the great Columbia River.

4. **Invention of the Steamboat.**—Jefferson's second term was distinguished by one of the greatest

inventions ever made,—that of the steamboat. When you see our rivers covered with floating palaces, remember that the first steamboat in the world was built by

Robert Fulton, a Pennsylvanian, and plied on the Hudson River in 1807. It made the trip between New York and Albany in thirty-six hours, and was a great improve-

ment on the river sloops, which took a week or more to perform the passage. This little boat of Fulton's led the way for the splendid steamers that have since become so common.

5. **British Aggressions.**—Great Britain still seemed to feel sore at the loss of her colonies. She was the strongest of all countries on the ocean, and took advantage of her power to stop American vessels and search them. She claimed the right of seizing British seamen, wherever they could be found, and carrying them off to serve on her own ships. And, worst of all, she took the liberty of deciding for herself who were British seamen, and sometimes seized Americans in stead.

6. The American vessels were often too weak to resist. This was the case with the Chesapeake. Sailing out of port, unprepared for battle, she was overhauled by a British ship, which fired on her, killed several of her crew, and carried off four men claimed as deserters. This news produced great excitement throughout the country. But the British were not always so fortunate. Several years after this, the Little Belt gave chase to the American ship President. After a time, however, she changed her course, and then it was the President's turn to chase. The Little Belt commenced the action as the American ship approached, but soon gave it up with the loss of thirty men.

7. It was clear that unless such outrages ceased war would follow. In the midst of the excitement, Jefferson's second term expired. He was succeeded by James Madison. Madison served two terms, from 1809 to 1817. They were signalized by two wars; one with the Indians of the west, and the other with Great Britain.

8. **Tecumseh.**—The west was now rapidly filling up with settlers. The Indians, again alarmed and forgetting the lesson Wayne had taught them, were ready once more to dig up the tomahawk against the United States. At their head was Tecumseh, the most formidable Indian warrior that ever fought against our country, crafty, eloquent, and a giant in strength. Tecumseh's brother was a noted prophet, and both had great influence among the frontier tribes. They refused to keep the treaty that had been made with the United States, and planned a general rising against the whites.

9. British agents encouraged Tecumseh and his brother to carry out their scheme. The Indians generally were ready to listen to them. While Tecumseh was away, visiting distant tribes, the prophet's head-quarters were fixed at the mouth of the Tippecanoe River, in what is now the western part of Indiana. Here his followers gathered around him and built a town.

LESSON XLVI.

BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE.—WAR WITH ENGLAND.

1. **Indian Troubles.**—The territory of Indiana was at this time governed by William Henry Harrison, afterward President of the United States. The crafty Tecumseh thought he would commence the war by striking a blow at Governor Harrison. So, going to the capital of the territory with several hundred warriors, he asked for an interview. On a given signal, his men were to fall upon the whites who were present, and let none escape. Governor Harrison met him as desired, but,

suspecting treachery, took such precautions that Tecumseh, bold as he was, durst not give the signal.

2. Tecumseh had all the pride of his race. At a meeting between him and Harrison, a chair was placed for him by the interpreter, who said, as he offered it, "Your father [meaning Harrison] requests you to take a chair." "The sun is my father," replied Tecumseh, proudly, "and the earth is my mother; on her bosom will I repose;" and, wrapping his blanket around him, he sat down on the ground.

3. Wishing to unite the Red Men in one common cause, Tecumseh visited the Creeks, who lived in Alabama and Georgia. Many of them listened to him and promised their aid. But before the Creeks could take the field, and while Tecumseh was still absent, an army under General Harrison approached the Tippecanoe River. They intended destroying the prophet's town, unless a satisfactory treaty was signed.

4. **Battle of Tippecanoe.**—Here Harrison was met by several Indian ambassadors, who said that their nation desired peace, and would sign a treaty on the next day. That very night the war-whoop was suddenly heard, and the army was attacked by savages on every side. Harrison, however, was prepared. He had directed his men to encamp in order of battle, and now he hurried from one point to another, urging them to stand their ground till daylight.

5. The Indians, hidden in the long prairie-grass, poured in a deadly fire with the rifle. They had chewed their bullets, so that they would tear the flesh, and every volley they fired caused the wounded to scream with pain. Very few of Harrison's men had been in battle before; still, throughout that terrible night, they kept

their line unbroken. When day dawned, they charged the savages. The latter fought desperately. Their prophet had assured them that they would gain the battle, and they believed him. But prophets sometimes make mistakes, and so they found in this case.

6. A vigorous charge drove the Indians from their cover. They fled in all directions. The prophet's town was destroyed, and the army returned in triumph.—General Harrison was as merciful as he was brave. Shortly before the battle, a negro deserter, who had been hired by the Indians to murder the general, was seized while lying hidden near his tent. He was condemned to death, and secured, till the sentence could be carried out, by fastening his feet, like a wedge, between the sides of a log that had been partially split.

7. As he thus lay, he kept his eyes sadly fixed on the general. Harrison's feelings were moved. He could not bear to have the negro executed, and asked his officers to pardon him. They were unwilling to do so. They felt that the wicked man deserved to die. Yet when their general, who had the greatest cause to condemn him, pleaded in his favor, they could not refuse, and the wretched negro was spared.

8. **War declared.**—Hardly were these Indian troubles over when the difficulty with Great Britain became more serious than ever. She refused to give up any of her claims. She would search American vessels whenever she saw fit. This settled the question. Henry Clay, John C. Calhoun, and other great statesmen then in Congress, said that it would be wrong for America to submit any longer. Accordingly, war was declared against Great Britain. This is generally called the **War of 1812,** because it commenced in that year.

LESSON XLVII.

REVERSES ON LAND: TRIUMPHS ON THE OCEAN.

1. **Hull's Expedition and Surrender.**—The United States do not keep a great army all the time ready, as European countries do. When, therefore, war was declared, there was much to prepare. Those who had charge of affairs knew but little of war; and hence some mistakes were made at first, and some reverses suffered. The first thing proposed was an invasion of Canada. To carry this out, a few regular soldiers and some volunteers from Ohio were placed under the command of General Hull, the governor of Michigan.

2. Hull led his men across into Canada from Detroit But he marched so slowly that before he reached the first British fort the Canadian militia were in arms. Tecumseh and his warriors lost no time in joining the enemy and cutting off the supplies of the Americans. A British army was also on the march against them. So, in stead of attacking the fort, Hull turned round and marched back as fast as he could. The British followed, crossed the river, and appeared in full force before Detroit. (See map, p. 154.)

3. The Americans were well posted, and were all ready to receive the British with grape-shot as they approached. What was their indignation, when they saw a white flag displayed above the fort! Hull had become frightened, and raised the flag as a signal of surrender. His men wept as they saw it, but there was no remedy. Not only Detroit, with its garrison, but also the whole of Michigan, was given up to the enemy.

Hull was afterward tried. He was found guilty of cowardice and sentenced to be shot, but was pardoned by the President.

4. **On the Niagara Frontier.**—Shortly after this, a body of militia gathered on the frontier of New York. Their design was to cross the Niagara River, which separates New York from Canada, and attack the British at Queenstown. Some boats having been procured, the first division of the army crossed. They gallantly drove the enemy from their batteries and seized the heights. But a fresh British army was approaching, and it was necessary to bring over the rest of the men. To the dismay of their officers and their own disgrace, they refused to move. The sight of their wounded comrades, who had been brought back, had dampened their courage.

5. Thus abandoned by their companions, the Americans who had crossed, after holding out as long as they could, surrendered. Nothing more was attempted at that time on the frontier. Both invasions of Canada had failed. Some glorious victories on the ocean, however, made up for these reverses on land. Little was expected of our infant navy, when matched against Great Britain, the powerful mistress of the sea. But courage and will often make up for want of strength.

6. **Naval Operations.**—One of the greatest naval victories of the Americans was gained by Captain Isaac Hull, in the frigate Constitution. After being chased by a British squadron four days, and escaping by his good management, Hull fell in with the Guerriere [*gare-e-air'*]. This vessel was one of the finest in the British navy. She had long been on the look-out for "Yankee craft," and expected to make short work of the Constitution. But Hull's broadsides soon made her lower her flag. She was

so much injured that he could not take her into port, and the next day he blew her up.

7. Victories were also gained by the Essex, the President, and the Argus. The Wasp, Captain Jones, had a sharp conflict with the British brig Frolic. Having brought his vessel so close to the Frolic that in loading his rammers touched her side, Jones ordered his men to board. They found the deck a scene of carnage. Only three officers remained there, and one old sailor, coolly seated at the helm. Before Jones could secure his prize, a British seventy-four came along and captured both vessels.

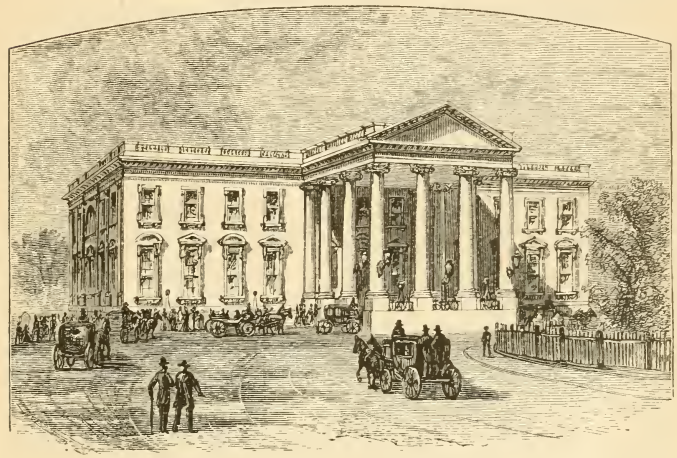
8. The same brave Decatur who had distinguished himself in the Tripolitan war now commanded the frigate United States. He succeeded in capturing the British vessel Macedonian. Late in the year, another great victory was won by the Constitution, now commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, over the British frigate Java. The Java had to be blown up, but her wheel was first taken out, to replace that of the Constitution, which was damaged in the action.

9. Long after the war, a British officer visited the Constitution. When asked his opinion of her, he replied that she was a fine vessel in every respect, except that her wheel was clumsy. "Yes," replied the captain, "it is clumsy. It is the old wheel of the Java, which we put in, and have kept ever since as a trophy of the victory."

LESSON XLVIII.

THE WAR IN THE NORTHWEST.

1. **Harrison's Campaign.**—One great cause of the defeats of the Americans in the northwest, had been the neglect of Congress to provide a suitable army. It was still backward in acting. There were some who



The President's Home, called the White House, Washington.

openly opposed the war, and said the President ought not to be supported in it. The frontier, however, now lay open to the British, and it was necessary for something to be done. A body of volunteers from Kentucky had already taken the field, and General Harrison, the hero of Tippecanoe, was appointed to their command.

2. Harrison's object was to recover Detroit, but his march lay through swamps that seemed almost endless,

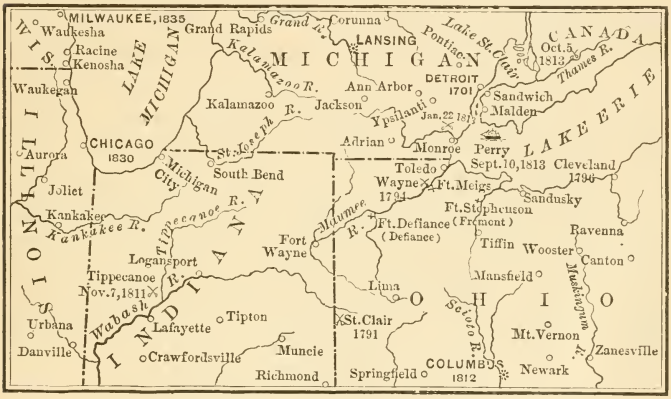
and when winter set in he was still some distance off. He had, therefore, to wait for spring. The army went into winter-quarters in two divisions, one under Harrison himself, the other under General Winchester. During the winter, Winchester, hearing that Frenchtown, a post to the north, was in danger, advanced to its aid and dispersed a body of the enemy. But he was very soon attacked by a large force of British and Indians under Proctor.

3. During the battle, General Winchester himself was captured by a famous Indian chief called Round Head. Delighted with the uniform of his prisoner, Round Head stripped him of it without delay, and putting it on himself was soon strutting about the field as proudly as a peacock. Proctor, shortly afterward passing the spot, was surprised to see the American general shivering half naked over a fire, for it was bitterly cold. It was with great difficulty he could make Round Head give up his borrowed plumes.

4. Though their general was a prisoner, part of the Americans still held out. At length a letter was sent them by Winchester, recommending them to lay down their arms. They did so, on receiving a pledge from Proctor that their lives and property should be spared. But no sooner had they surrendered, than Proctor, with his British troops and such of the prisoners as could walk, returned to Canada, leaving the sick and wounded Americans behind, with no one to protect them from his Indian allies. You know the mercy of the savages. Few of the sufferers escaped the flames and the tomahawk. So much was the pledge of Proctor worth.

5. **Siege of Fort Meigs.**—Proctor now thought he was sure of crushing Harrison also. As soon as the

weather allowed, he was on the march for the American camp. But Harrison had not been idle. Weakened as he was by the loss of Winchester's division, he could not hope to take Detroit, but he resolved to hold his ground. Accordingly, he commenced a fort in what is now the northwestern part of Ohio, and kept his men at work night and day that it might be ready for the foe. He had no time to spare. Proctor and Tecumseh soon appeared before Fort Meigs [*megz*], as this post was called, and summoned the garrison to surrender. "Not while I have the honor to command," was Harrison's brief answer.



WESTERN BATTLE-FIELDS LOCATED RELATIVELY TO PRESENT CITIES.

6. The attack was pushed with vigor. The Indians even climbed into trees overhanging the fort, that they might pick off the men. Harrison himself, as he moved around giving his orders, was frequently shot at. Once a ball struck a bench on which he was sitting, and at another time a soldier was killed by his side. He received no harm, however, but baffled every effort of the enemy.

7. News was now received that a body of Kentuckians was near at hand, hastening to relieve the fort. Harrison sent word to them to attack one division of the enemy, while a detachment from the fort fell upon another. The sally from the fort was successful, but those who were advancing for its relief lost more than half their number, the greater part of whom were captured. Proctor allowed the prisoners to be treated so cruelly that even Tecumseh rebuked him. Finding they could make no impression on Fort Meigs, in a few days both British and Indians gave up the siege.

8. During the year 1813, the Americans gained some more brilliant victories on the ocean. Commodore Porter distinguished himself by a successful cruise in the Pacific, in the course of which he took twelve armed whalers. Captain Lawrence, after taking two prizes in the Hornet, was appointed to the command of the Chesapeake. In this vessel he met with a sad reverse. The Chesapeake was poorly equipped, and was taken by the British frigate Shannon. Lawrence himself was mortally wounded. "Don't give up the ship," said he to his men as he was carried below. Even at that trying moment his thoughts were on his country.

LESSON XLIX.

PIKE'S EXPEDITION.—FORT STEPHENSON.—LAKE ERIE.

1. **The invasion of Canada** from the New York frontier, in 1812, had failed; but this did not prevent General Pike from attempting it the next year. With a body of men raised for the purpose, he made a descent on

the capital of Upper Canada. This lay on the shore of Lake Ontario. It was then called York, but the name has since been changed to Toronto. Landing in the face of a heavy fire, the Americans took the enemy's redoubt, and advanced to within a short distance of their barracks, which seemed to be abandoned.

2. It was well they stopped where they did, for in a few moments a terrible explosion took place. Logs and stones were hurled high in the air. The British had lighted a slow match before they retired, and thus blown up their own magazine. Several hundred of the Americans were more or less injured. The rest pushed on after the British, and took a number of them prisoners. York, with a large amount of stores, fell into their hands.

3. General Pike was struck down by the explosion. As he lay dying on the field, he heard the victorious shouts of his men. One of his officers asked if he could do anything for him. "Place the enemy's flag under my head," said he. As it was done, his eye lighted up with triumph, and he expired without a groan. After this, the American army took the British posts on the Niagara River. They were abandoned by the enemy, who fell back to the heights west of Lake Ontario.

4. Sackett's Harbor, in the state of New York, was the chief naval station of the Americans on Lake Ontario. This place, left almost undefended, was attacked by a party of the enemy from across the lake. They were driven back by the militia under General Brown. During the attack, one of the British officers, Captain Gray, was shot down by an American boy, who had been a servant in his family in Canada. After the battle, the boy went to his former master, and asked his forgiveness.

Captain Gray was dying from the effects of the wound, but gave the boy his watch as a token that he forgave him with his whole heart.

5. **Attack on Fort Stephenson.**—After his disappointment at Fort Meigs, Proctor turned his arms against another post at no great distance from it. This was Fort Stephenson, commanded by Major Croghan [*kro'gan*], a youth of twenty-one. Proctor summoned the garrison to surrender, if they wished to escape being massacred by the Indians when the fort was taken. Croghan replied that the fort would not be taken till all the garrison had fallen, and therefore a massacre could do them no harm. The British at once opened a brisk cannonade.

6. Croghan had but one cannon. To make the enemy believe he had more, he fired it first from one point of the fort and then from another. After a while he saw the British gathering for an attack. Loading his single cannon to the muzzle, he brought it to bear upon them, and quietly awaited their approach. They were soon within thirty feet. At this moment the cannon was fired. Whole ranks were swept down, and a deadly volley from the muskets of the garrison followed. A retreat was ordered, and the next day the siege was abandoned.

7. **Battle of Lake Erie.**—In the summer of 1813, Commodore Perry was sent to Lake Erie. The British had command of the lake, and Perry was sent to take it from them. The United States had no vessels there. But there were plenty of trees growing on the shore, and out of these Perry built his own vessels. He soon had a little fleet ready, and stood out to give battle to the British. Many Indians were gathered on an island in the lake, to see the engagement.

8. As soon as the British were ready, they sailed out of port to meet the Americans. The action was a hot one. Perry's flag-ship engaged the two largest vessels of the enemy, and was badly cut up. Leaping into a boat, Perry then made for another of his vessels. As he passed within pistol-shot of the enemy, he stood proudly erect, heeding not the balls that fell around him. To the wonder of all, he reached the deck of the Niagara uninjured, and the battle was renewed.

9. The breeze now freshened. Perry took advantage of it to plunge through the enemy's line, and give a raking fire right and left. This decided the day. The British commander hauled down his colors and surrendered his fleet. The number of prisoners taken was greater than that of Perry's men who survived the battle.

10. Perry was a man of few words. He announced his glorious victory to General Harrison in the following brief dispatch: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours—two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and a sloop." Men who do much, can afford to say little.

LESSON L.

HARRISON'S INVASION OF CANADA.—CREEK WAR.

1. **Battle of the Thames.**—The British were dismayed at Perry's victory. General Harrison at once followed it up with an invasion of Canada. Proctor and Tecumseh had hastily retreated. Harrison overtook them at the Thames [*temz*] River (see map, p. 155). He found the British drawn up on a strip of land between the river and a swamp, held by Tecumseh and his warriors. In

extending his line across this strip, Proctor had weakened it too much. Observing this, Harrison directed Colonel Johnson to charge the enemy's front with his Kentucky horsemen.

2. The order was gallantly obeyed. The Kentuckians forced their way completely through the British ranks, and formed in the rear. The enemy, thus finding themselves between two fires, threw down their arms. Proctor escaped only by the swiftness of his horse. The Indians were now to be dislodged from the swamp. Again the fearless Kentuckians advanced to the charge. They were warmly received, and many a saddle was emptied. But, while the battle was at its height, Tecumseh received a bullet in his breast.

3. The chief had expected it. "My body," said he, before the action commenced, "will remain on the field of battle." Stepping forward, he gave his last command, and fell dead at the foot of a tree. His men were seized with horror. The chief who had so often led them to victory was no more. They threw away their arms and fled. The battle of the Thames was won. Michigan was recovered. The western frontier was safe.

4. **Creek War.**—The Creeks had not forgotten Tecumseh's eloquent harangues. In the summer of 1813, a league was formed against the United States by a number of southern tribes. The settlers in what is now Alabama became alarmed and took refuge in the nearest forts. The crafty Wetherford was at the head of the Creeks. He commenced the war with a cruel blow at the whites. Lurking around Fort Mimms till he found the gates unguarded, he and his followers rushed in, set fire to the buildings, and massacred all, men, women, and children, without mercy.

5. A large force was at once called into the field to avenge this massacre. The Tennesseeans reached the ground first. They were commanded by Andrew Jackson, a man of iron will, whom the Indians called "the Sharp Knife." Jackson and his men lost no time in

Fall of Tecumseh at the Battle of the Thames.

attacking the Creek villages. The Indians fought desperately, trusting to the magic spells of their "medicine-men." But they found that magic availed little against lead and steel. They were defeated in every battle with great loss.

6. Before long Jackson's men began to suffer from want of food. Their supplies failed to arrive. They could find nothing to eat in the wilderness but acorns. For a time they bore their hardships patiently, but at last they declared they would remain no longer. They had already commenced their march for home, when Jackson appeared before them on horseback. His left arm, which had been shattered by a bullet, was in a sling. His right hand grasped a musket, and he warned them that he would shoot down the first man that advanced another step. The men knew he would keep his word, and ashamed of their mutiny, one after another, they returned to duty.

7. About this time, another invading army reached what the Creeks called their *beloved ground.* This they regarded as sacred, and their prophet had made them believe that here no foe could harm them. They fought long and well, but were again defeated with heavy loss. In the spring of 1814, Jackson put an end to the war by a decisive victory. A great number of Creeks, with their women and children, had gathered in the bend of a river, and thrown up a breastwork of logs for their defence in front. They were here totally defeated. Their prophet was killed, and the power of their nation destroyed.

8. Immediately after this battle, Jackson was sitting alone in his tent at sunset, when a noble-looking Indian entered. "I am Wetherford," said he. "My people are all gone. My warriors can no longer hear my voice. I have come to ask peace for myself and the few that remain. You are a brave man. I rely upon your generosity." Wetherford's request was granted. He was allowed to go back to the forest to collect his scattered

countrymen, and through his influence a treaty was made by the surviving Creeks with the United States.

9. In one of the battles with the Creeks, an Indian mother was among the slain. An infant boy was found upon her breast. He was brought to the camp, and Jackson tried to find a nurse for him among the Indian women who had been taken. But they turned away, saying, "His mother is dead, let the child die too." Not so thought the tender-hearted general. Amid all the labors of the camp, he found time to feed him with his own hands. The orphan grew to be a beautiful and promising youth, and Jackson, who was childless, adopted him. But, before he reached manhood, he fell a victim to consumption.

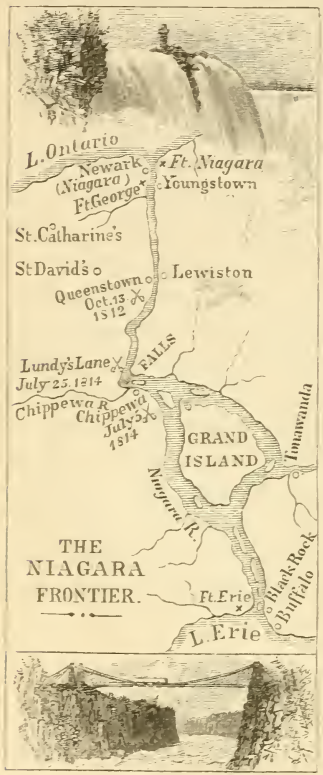
10. From boyhood Andrew Jackson had displayed a noble spirit. When only thirteen years old, he shouldered a musket in the Revolutionary War. In a skirmish with the British, he was taken prisoner. To break the spirit of the young rebel, the British leader ordered him to clean his boots. Andrew refused, when the cowardly officer drew his sword, and aimed a blow at his head. Andrew saved his life by catching the blow on his left arm; but he received a wound which left a scar that he carried to the grave. You will learn how he afterward paid back the British for this blow.

LESSON LI.

CLOSE OF THE WAR OF 1812.

1. **Operations in Canada.**—The Americans continued unsuccessful in their attempts upon Canada, till General Brown assumed the command in the summer of 1814. Then their fortune at once changed. Crossing the

Niagara River, Brown won the battle of Chippewa; and shortly after again defeated the enemy, who had been reënforced, at Bridgewater, or Lundy's Lane, close to the Falls of Niagara. Late in the year, besieged in Fort Erie by a large force of British, he surprised them with a well-planned sally, drove them from their works with great loss, and compelled them to raise the siege. See if you can find these places on the map.



2. The battle of Bridgewater was one of the hottest actions in the war. General Scott, who was long at the head of our army, gained great glory in this engagement. Colonel Miller also distinguished himself. He was asked if he could take a British battery which swept the field and threatened the Americans with destruction. "I will try, sir," was his reply. He tried with such good effect that his men were soon firing on the British with their own guns. Three times the British endeavored to retake this battery, and three times they were driven back. Not till midnight did they give it up and leave the Americans in possession of the field.

3. **Battle of Lake Champlain.**—In September, a powerful British army and fleet made their appearance on Lake Champlain, with the view of penetrating through New York to the Hudson River. Plattsburg was the first point threatened. General Macomb [*ma-koom'*] quickly called out the militia, enrolling even boys that were old enough to handle a musket. Commodore McDonough [*mac-don'o*], by great exertions, got together a few vessels, and met the English commodore, Downie, who had boasted that with his flag ship alone he could beat the whole American squadron. But, like most boasters, Downie was disappointed. McDonough gained a glorious victory over him at Plattsburg, and captured his whole fleet. The land forces, which had been repulsed by the militia while the naval battle was going on, retreated in hot haste that same night, leaving great quantities of stores behind.

4. **British Descent on the Atlantic Coast.**—In the summer of 1814, a British fleet appeared on the Atlantic coast, containing General Ross and four thousand veteran troops. Landing not far from the city of Washington, they set out for the capital. A body of militia was hastily raised, and an attempt made to arrest the march of the enemy, but it was unsuccessful. On the evening after the battle, the British entered the capital, the President and many of the inhabitants having fled before them. They set fire to the public buildings, destroyed a large amount of property, and then returned to their ships.

5. Ross then thought he would treat the city of Baltimore in the same way, but there he found the people better prepared. The fort in the harbor successfully resisted the British fleet, and an army of ten thousand men

was drawn up to oppose Ross's veterans. While reconnoitring the Americans, Ross himself received a mortal wound. His men tried to force a passage through the American lines, but were so warmly received that they gave up the attempt. The next day, they returned to their boats. Thus Baltimore escaped their ravages.

6. **Battle of New Orleans.**—Late in the year, the people of New Orleans were dismayed by the news that an overwhelming force of British troops was about to make a descent on their city. Some thought it was vain to resist, and were for surrendering without a struggle. Fortunately, at this time, General Jackson appeared among them. He at once assumed the command, erected fortifications, and drilled the militia. He was supported by a number of gallant Tennesseeans, unerring marksmen, who were ever ready to take the field at his call. The British landed about the middle of December, and advanced to within nine miles of New Orleans.

7. After a bold night attack, in which his men behaved well, Jackson intrenched himself below the city, on a ditch which extended from the Mississippi River to a cypress swamp. The enemy came up, and planted their batteries nearer and nearer. But the Americans, though they had only ten cannon, returned their fire with spirit, and inflicted far more injury than they received. On the 8th of January, 1815, the British, led by General Pak'enham, advanced to storm Jackson's works. They found the hero ready to receive them.

8. A terrible fire was poured on the advancing ranks of the British, both from the American cannon and from the rifles of men who seldom missed their aim. The enemy wavered. Fresh troops came up. "See that every shot tells!" thundered Jackson. Again the foe fell be-

fore those fatal discharges, and they retired in disorder. A few crossed the ditch, but were shot down on the parapet. Pakenham himself fell. The attempt was hopeless, and the British officer who succeeded to the command drew off his men, leaving two thousand on the field. Abandoning the attack, the British made for their ships as quickly as possible. The whole loss of the Americans was only twenty-seven men.

9. Before the battle, Jackson had taken very decided measures with the people. He made some of them soldiers in spite of themselves. A citizen called on him, to complain that his property had been seized by an officer. "Have you a musket?" asked Jackson. "No," answered the man. "Here, guard," cried the general, "get this man a musket and put him in the ranks." He paid no attention to the courts, and after the battle was fined a thousand dollars by one of them for contempt. The amount was quickly raised by the people; but Jackson refused to receive it, and paid the fine himself. Many years afterward, Congress refunded him the money.

NEW ORLEANS AND THE VICINITY.

10. The battle of New Orleans closed the war. A treaty of peace had been signed on the 24th of December, 1814. If the news had been received a little sooner, the British might have escaped their disastrous defeat. Every

one was glad when peace was announced. Bells were rung and flags were hoisted. Commerce had been almost destroyed, and all kinds of business had suffered much during the war.

LESSON LII.

JAMES MONROE.—JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

1. On the 4th of March, 1817, **James Monroe,** of Virginia, became President. During his two terms, the people began to see the importance of roads and canals. Many internal improvements were commenced. Among these was the great Erie Canal in the state of New York, nearly four hundred miles long. It connects Lake Erie, at Buffalo, with the Hudson River, at Albany. This canal was building during the whole of Monroe's two terms. When completed, its good effects were felt throughout the north and west.

2. Soon after Monroe became President, a war with the Seminoles broke out. The Seminoles lived in Florida, which still belonged to Spain. Set on by the Spaniards and a couple of Englishmen, they commenced robbing and murdering on the frontier of Georgia and Alabama. Jackson, with a body of Tennesseeans was sent against them, and handled them so roughly that for a while they let the American settlers alone.

3. Not long after this, Spain sold Florida to the United States. The country was now in a thriving condition. Many emigrants came over from Europe. No less than five new states were admitted into the Union while Monroe was President. American commerce, too, was rapidly increasing. It suffered for a time from pi-

rates who infested the shores of Cuba. But, thanks to the energy of Commodore Porter, who was sent against them, these desperadoes were dispersed and their haunts broken up.

4. The summer of 1824 was signalized by the arrival of La Fayette, on a visit to the land for which he had bled. Travelling through the country, La Fayette found that forty years had made great changes in every thing but the hearts of the people. They still loved him as their fathers had done. He was everywhere received with honor as the nation's guest. At Bunker Hill he laid the corner-stone of the great monument, and at Mount Vernon wept over the dust of his beloved Washington.

5. Monroe's second term expired on the 4th of March, 1825. **John Quincy Adams,** a son of John Adams, the second President, was chosen to succeed him. Mr. Adams had been minister to several foreign governments. He served but one term, during which the country continued to flourish.

6. On the 4th of July, 1826, two of the great men of America died,—John Adams, the father of the President, and Thomas Jefferson. You remember how they had served their country; now in a good old age they fell asleep, on the very day their country was celebrating the birth of its freedom. The last thoughts of Adams were of his friend: "Jefferson survives," said he, shortly before he ceased to breathe. But Jefferson was already dead. "I resign my soul to my God, and my daughter to my country," were his last words.

7. President Adams was in favor of opening roads, constructing canals, improving the harbors on the coast, and other public works. He was also in favor of a *tariff*, that is, of laying duties on goods imported into the coun-

try, such as cottons, cloth, silk, iron, &c. He thought that a high tariff would encourage people to produce these goods in the United States, because they would be able to sell them lower than similar articles brought from abroad. But many opposed a tariff, because they had to pay more for their goods in consequence.

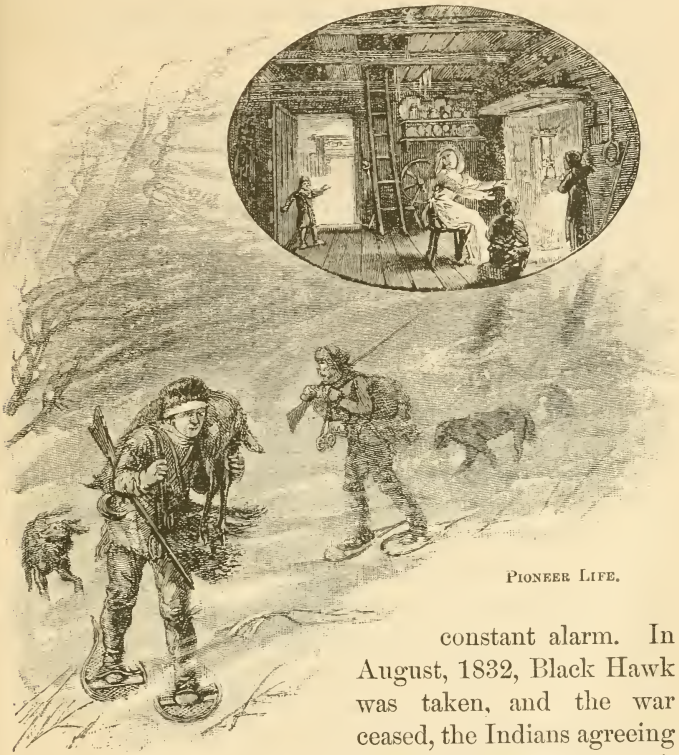
LESSON LIII.

ANDREW JACKSON.

1. In selecting their **seventh President,** the people remembered one who had often served them,—in the Creek War, at New Orleans, against the Seminoles. You know who is meant,—Andrew Jackson. "Hurrah for Jackson!" was now the cry. But, like all men of great will, Jackson had made some enemies. So party spirit was very violent while he was President. The mass of the people, however, loved him, and he was kept in office two terms—from 1829 to 1837.

2. **Difficulties with the Indians.**—The northwest was now fast filling up with industrious settlers. More and more every year they encroached on the hunting-grounds of the Indians. Long trains of wagons would be seen winding along through the prairies, bearing the sturdy pioneer, his wife, his little ones, and his goods. Sometimes the long prairie grass would be set on fire, and then it was fortunate if the poor emigrants escaped. At other times they found no less fierce a foe in the prowling savage. The Indians would sell their lands to the government, and agree to leave them; yet, when it came to the point, they would often fight rather than do so.

3. This was the case with the Sacs and Foxes in northwestern Illinois. Under their chief, Black Hawk, they gave great trouble for a time, and kept the frontier in



Pioneer Life.

constant alarm. In August, 1832, Black Hawk was taken, and the war ceased, the Indians agreeing to remove farther west. A body of troops sent out under General Scott to take part in this war suffered much from the cholera, which was then raging in the United States.

4. **Opposition to the Tariff.**—In 1832, Congress increased the duties on imported goods. This produced

great excitement among those who opposed the tariff. South Carolina said that the duties should not be collected within her borders. Jackson said he should enforce the law, and took prompt measures for so doing. The difficulty was not settled till Congress passed a bill introduced by Henry Clay, providing for a gradual reduction of the tariff.

5. Jackson was opposed to the United States Bank. He vetoed a bill passed by Congress to recharter it. He also drew out the public money from this bank, thinking it would be safer in the state banks. There was a great storm of excitement when he did this, but Jackson never swerved from what he thought was right. He was equally decided with foreign governments. France, Denmark, Spain, and Portugal, were compelled to pay promptly for injuries done to American commerce. After this, the powers of Europe looked on the United States with much more respect than they had ever done before.

6. **Seminole War.**—The Seminoles had been defeated in 1817, but not subdued. When an attempt was made to remove them to lands west of the Mississippi, where they had agreed to go, they again commenced a harassing warfare. United States troops were sent against them; but the crafty savages laid ambuscades for them, and often succeeded in cutting off straggling parties. Then they would flee to inaccessible swamps, from which they would again issue, and commit their ravages.

7. General Scott, always called upon in time of need, was at last sent out to the Seminole country. Though often defeated, the Indians continued the war. In 1838, it was found necessary for an army to penetrate to their haunts in the swamps and forests. This was done, but with terrible suffering to the men. A decisive battle was

fought, in which the Seminoles suffered severely. Upon this, they signed a treaty with the United States. Since then, though less troublesome than formerly, they have from time to time ravaged the solitary settlements in their neighborhood.

LESSON LIV.

MARTIN VAN BUREN.—HARRISON AND TYLER.

1. On the 4th of March, 1837, General Jackson left the country in the hands of **Martin Van Buren,** of New York, whom the people had selected to succeed him.

2. The chief events of Van Buren's term were a distressing panic and revulsion in the business world in 1837, and a movement on the Canada frontier which threatened to produce trouble with Great Britain. A portion of the Canadians rose against the British government. The people of the United States wanted to help them, and a large body of men took possession of Navy Island in the Niagara River, which belonged to Great Britain. A party of royalists retaliated by crossing from Canada, and setting fire to a steamboat which was used for bringing supplies to Navy Island. War would have followed, had not the President promptly prevented the people from interfering in the affairs of Canada.

3. **General Harrison,** the hero of Tippecanoe and the Thames, was next raised to the presidency, March 4th, 1841. To the great sorrow of the country, General Harrison died just one month after his inauguration, leaving the duties of his office to be performed by the Vice-president, John Tyler, of Virginia. Tyler, like Jackson, was opposed to a United States Bank. When Congress passed

a bill providing for such an institution, he vetoed it, and this made him many enemies.

4. During **Tyler's term,** a troublesome question was settled. This was the fixing of a boundary line between Maine and the British province of New Brunswick. Daniel Webster, one of our greatest statesmen, took the matter in hand for the United States, and settled it to the satisfaction of his country.

5. In 1842, a great exploring expedition, which had been away four years, returned. It had visited various parts of the Pacific before but little known, and made some important discoveries in the far south. Among these was that of a large body of land in the Southern Ocean, extending for a distance of 1700 miles. This is now known as the Antarctic Continent.

6. The magnetic telegraph, that great triumph of the human mind, was first brought into practical operation in the spring of 1844. Its inventor was Samuel F. B. Morse, a native of Massachusetts. To aid him in testing it, Congress had set apart $30,000. A line was established between Washington and Baltimore, and found to work with complete success. Telegraph wires were soon threading the country in all directions.

7. Among the last acts of Congress during Tyler's term was **the admission of Texas into the Union.** Texas had been a province of Mexico. It was settled chiefly by emigrants from the United States. Oppressed by Mexico, the Texans had declared themselves independent, and maintained their position by several hard-won victories. Still Mexico would not acknowledge their independence. Twice had Texas applied for admission to the Union; and in 1845, the people being in favor of it, she was admitted as a sister state.

LESSON LV.

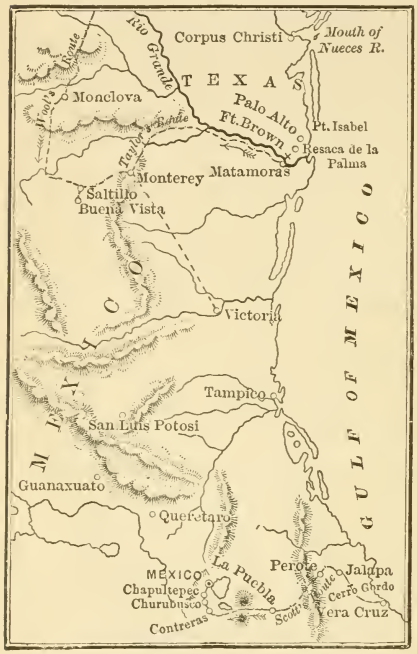
JAMES K. POLK.—THE MEXICAN WAR.

1. **James Knox Polk,** of Tennessee, became President on the 4th of March, 1845. The admission of Texas into the Union greatly provoked Mexico. A boundary line had never been agreed upon between that country and Texas. The Mexicans utterly refused to treat with the United States on the subject, and threatened war unless the boundary which they claimed was admitted. The United States thought that this was rather high ground to take, and ordered General Zachary Taylor, who had done good service in the Seminole War, to occupy the disputed territory. Taylor promptly obeyed, erecting a fort and establishing about twenty miles from it a depot of provisions.

2. **War with Mexico.**—The Mexicans were soon in arms. Taylor's army was small, and fearing that his provision-depot might be taken, he marched with the main body of his troops to supply it with the means of defence. On his way back to the fort, he found a Mexican army twice as large as his own drawn up to dispute his passage. An engagement, the first in the war, at once took place (May 8th, 1846); this is known as the battle of Palo Alto [*pah'lo ahl'to*]. It was followed by a still severer engagement the next day. In both of these the Americans were completely victorious. They reached the fort none too soon. It had sustained a tremendous cannonading from the enemy, but the garrison had gallantly held out.

3. Taylor soon commenced invading the enemy's country. He had by this time received fresh troops; for,

when the news of his first two battles was received, more volunteers than were wanted offered themselves for the war. One place after another was taken, the Mexicans falling back as Taylor advanced, till they reached the strong city of Monterey [*mon-ta-ra'*]. This place was carried by storm, though not without great loss. Taylor continued to advance, and on the 22d of February, 1847, found himself at Buena Vista [*bwa'nah vees'tah*] in the presence of the Mexican general, Santa Anna, and an army three times the size of his own. Santa Anna summoned him to surrender. "General Taylor never surrenders," was the reply.—See if you can find Palo Alto, Monterey, and Buena Vista on the map.



EASTERN COAST OF MEXICO.

4. Fearful was the struggle at **Buena Vista.** It was only by steady courage and the skilful handling of their artillery, that the Americans held their ground against the overwhelming numbers of the foe. "Give them a little more grape, Captain Bragg," said Taylor

coolly, as he saw a column of the enemy waver before Bragg's well-directed cannon. The setting sun left the Americans in possession of the field. In the morning it was found that Santa Anna and his army had retreated. This was the end of Taylor's campaign, which had been every way glorious.

5. General Taylor was perfectly cool in battle. Once, when the Mexican cannon-balls were coming rather too close to be pleasant, he noticed the officers around him bowing their heads as the balls passed. "No dodging, gentlemen," said the veteran; "a soldier should not dodge." Just then a tremendous ball whizzed by, so close to Taylor's head that before he knew it he was dodging himself. His officers burst into a hearty laugh. The general had to join them. "Well," said he, "you may dodge the balls, if you choose, but do not run."

6. **Scott's Campaign.**—The chief command in the war was now intrusted to General Scott. He planned an invasion from another quarter, and a descent on Mexico, the capital of the enemy's country. Vera Cruz, on the Gulf of Mexico, defended by one of the strongest fortresses in America, was first invested, and taken after a heavy bombardment.

7. From this point Scott advanced into the interior of the country. He met with no resistance till he reached the Cordilleras [*cor-deel-ya'ras*], but there had to force his way through a rocky pass at the point of the bayonet. The Mexican army was routed. So hasty was their retreat that Santa Anna left his wooden leg behind. It was found by the Americans and sent home as a trophy.

8. General Scott continued his march (you will find his route on the map, p. 176) till he reached the neighborhood of the city of Mexico. Here the enemy had

gathered for a final stand. Their number greatly exceeded that of the Americans, and they were protected by a succession of strong works, which commanded the approaches to the capital. These were taken, one after another, by dint of hard fighting and incredible exertions on

Scene in Mexico.

the part of the Americans. No troops could have behaved better.

9. **Mexico taken.**—On the 14th of September, 1847, General Scott and his men entered the city of Mexico in triumph. Meanwhile, the northern part of the country had been invaded and conquered by an American army. The United States was everywhere victorious, and the Mexican government was now willing to come to

terms. A treaty was made, by which Mexico gave up to the United States the disputed territory on the frontier of Texas, and the provinces of New Mexico and Upper California, which had been already conquered. The United States was to pay for these extensive tracts between fifteen and twenty millions of dollars.

10. The only other event of importance during President Polk's term, was the settlement of a boundary line in the northwest with Great Britain. A large section of country, known as Oregon, lying between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean, was claimed by both nations. As it was now rapidly becoming settled, it was important to have the boundary fixed, and this was at length with some difficulty accomplished.

LESSON LVI.

TAYLOR AND FILLMORE.

1. **Taylor's Administration.**—General Taylor's services in the Mexican war were rewarded with the highest office in the people's gift. He was made President in 1849; and Millard Fillmore, of New York, was at the same time elected Vice-president.

2. **California,** you remember, was ceded by Mexico to the United States. In 1848, a great discovery was made there. A laborer, examining some sand that caught his eye with its glitter, found it to be mixed with gold. Further search showed that the precious metal was abundant. The news spread. Thousands at once flocked to the land of gold, from all parts of the world. California became rapidly settled, and now, early in Taylor's term, asked to be admitted as a state.

3. The people of the south had negro slavery; not so, those of the north. California wanted to come in as a free state. Years before, an agreement had been made that slavery should be permitted in all territory south of a certain line and excluded from all north of it. Now, as part of California was south of this line, many objected to receiving it except with slavery as one of its institutions. Angry feelings were aroused, which were not allayed till Henry Clay appeared as a peacemaker. Concessions were made by both sides, and a compromise bill was passed by Congress. California was admitted without slavery.

4. While the discussion was going on, the country was called a second time to mourn for its chief magistrate. The good General Taylor died, and **Fillmore** became President.

5. In 1850, an unlawful expedition was secretly fitted out in the United States, against Cuba. It was thought that the people of that lovely isle were tired of Spanish rule, and would gladly seize on any chance of entering the Union. This was found to be a mistake. Six hundred adventurers from the United States landed on the island; but, finding that no welcome except a hot one from the Spanish troops awaited them, they quickly reembarked. The next year a similar attempt was made. The adventurers this time were attacked and defeated, and several of them, including their leader, executed.

6. The only remaining events of interest during the administration of Taylor and Fillmore were, the fitting out of two expeditions for the Arctic Ocean, to aid in ascertaining the fate of Sir John Franklin, the English explorer; and the death of the three leading statesmen of America,—John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina,

Henry Clay, of Kentucky, and Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts.

7. Fillmore was succeeded, on the 4th of March, 1853, by Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, who had served as a general in the Mexican War.

LESSON LVII.

FRANKLIN PIERCE.—JAMES BUCHANAN.

1. The beginning of **Pierce's term** was signalized by the opening of the World's Fair. A Crystal Palace, built of iron and glass, was erected for the enterprise in New York. The different states, as well as foreign nations, contributed their products, and thousands visited the exhibition from all parts of the country.

2. One of the greatest events of Pierce's term was the opening of commerce with Japan. Japan is a great empire, consisting of several large islands in the Pacific Ocean. It is occupied by a shrewd but peculiar people, who formerly avoided having anything to do with other nations. In the hope of opening a trade with this rich empire, Commodore Perry had been sent out to it with a squadron, bearing various presents and a letter from the President. By skilful management he persuaded the emperor to make a treaty and set apart two ports at which the merchants of the United States might trade.

3. There was great excitement in Pierce's term about the organizing of two territories, Kansas and Nebraska. As they lay north of the old line that had been agreed upon, some said that slavery was excluded from them. But another party claimed that the agreement had already

been broken by the admission of California as a free state, and that it should be left to the people of Kansas and Nebraska to decide for themselves on the subject of slavery. The latter carried the day. Kansas soon became the scene of a bitter struggle between the pro-slavery and anti-slavery settlers, and much blood was shed before the quarrel was ended.

4. On the 4th of March, 1857, **James Buchanan,** of Pennsylvania, a distinguished statesman, was inaugurated as President. In the fall of the same year, a great revulsion took place in the mercantile world. Banks suspended, factories closed, many merchants failed, and a general panic prevailed. It was some time before business revived and the country recovered.

5. Difficulties with the Mormons obliged Mr. Buchanan to send an army into their territory. The Mormons lived in Utah, far away from the settled portions of the United States. Here they defied the general government, claiming the right of naming their own rulers. When the army, however, arrived in the neighborhood of their chief city, the Mormons changed their tone and agreed to recognize the laws and authority of the United States.

6. Paraguay [*par-a-gwa'*], a South American state, having given our government various causes of offence and refusing to make reparation, a strong naval force was sent out to that country toward the close of 1858. A commissioner accompanied the fleet, to settle the difficulty if possible, without recourse to violence; and he succeeded in so doing.

7. In the fall of 1859, the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry, Virginia, was seized by John Brown and twenty-one associates, and an attempt made to excite an insurrection among the slaves. But it totally failed. The

movement was put down on the second day, by United States marines. Thirteen of the party were killed in the struggle; Brown and six of his companions were hanged; only two escaped.

8. The summer of 1860 was signalized by the arrival of an **embassy from Japan,**—consisting of seventy-one persons. They brought the treaty which had been agreed upon, for the President's signature. The Japanese were received as guests of the nation, and regarded with universal interest. They were much pleased with their visit, and took back with them many specimens of American art and industry.

9. Another object of interest presented itself about the same time. This was the mammoth steamship Great Eastern, the largest vessel in the world. The Great Eastern was built in England, and made its first trip to New York. It was over one eighth of a mile long, and attracted thousands of visitors, some of whom came many miles to see this triumph of human skill.

10. **Secession.**—In the fall of 1860, **Abraham Lincoln,** of Illinois, was elected President. The Southern leaders, fearing for slavery, had threatened to break up the Union if he was elected. All efforts to conciliate them were vain. Within three months, seven of the Southern States, South Carolina, Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas, declared that they had seceded, or separated, from the Union. On the 4th of February, 1861, they formed a separate Union, under the name of "the Confederate States of America." Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was chosen President.

11. Meanwhile, neither Congress nor the President did anything to prevent secession. The forts, arsenals, and other property in the seceded states, were seized by

the Confederates, who at once began to form an army. Gloomy indeed was the state of affairs when Mr. Lincoln, on the 4th of March, 1861, took his seat in the presidential chair.

LESSON LVIII.

COMMENCEMENT OF CIVIL WAR.

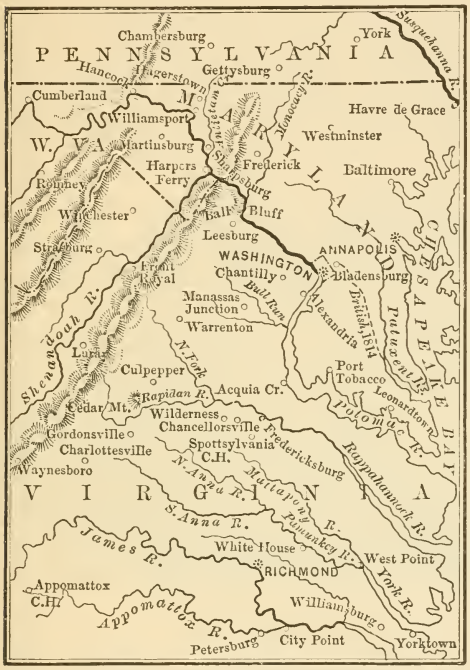
1. **Fort Sumter** in Charleston harbor was still held by a United States garrison under Major Anderson, though threatened by a large body of Southern troops. One of Mr. Lincoln's first measures was to send supplies and men to the relief of this fort, but they were not allowed to reach it. Still Major Anderson refused to surrender; and General Beauregard [*bo're-gard*], the Confederate commander, commenced a furious bombardment on the 12th of April. After thirty-four hours the garrison were obliged to evacuate the fort, and it fell into the hands of the Confederates.

2. President Lincoln immediately called on the loyal states for men, and met with a hearty response. On the other hand, within a short time after the fall of Sumter, four more states, Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee, joined the Confederacy. Southern forces were rapidly thrown up into Virginia, and Richmond was made the Confederate capital.

3. For a time Washington was seriously threatened by the Confederates. Volunteers, however, hastened to its defence, and the command of the Federal forces was intrusted to the veteran General Scott. He soon made a forward movement into Virginia. An army under General McClellan gained several victories, and drove out the

Confederates from the western part of the state. In eastern Virginia, the Federal forces under General McDowell were not so successful.

4. **Bull Run.**—Advancing westward from Washington, General McDowell found the Confederates strongly posted on a stream called Bull Run (see map). He tried to dislodge them, and a desperate battle ensued. At first the Federals had the advantage, but in consequence of the arrival of fresh columns of the enemy they were finally routed with great loss. Dismay seized on the friends of the Union, and the Confederate cause was greatly strengthened both at home and abroad.



SEAT OF THE CIVIL WAR IN VIRGINIA AND THE VICINITY.

5. The war soon extended to **Missouri.** This state was still loyal, but the Confederates tried hard to wrest it from the Union. After several battles, in one of which the brave General Lyon fell, they succeeded in gaining

possession of the southwestern part of the state. The United States forces, on the other hand, gained several advantages on the Atlantic coast, capturing a Confederate fort at Hatteras Inlet, North Carolina, and securing the fine harbor of Port Royal, South Carolina. (See map, p. 204.)

6. After the disaster at Bull Run, General McClellan was called to command the army of the Potomac. More men were raised, and the Federals again assumed the offensive. On the 21st of October, they were defeated with great loss at Ball's Bluff, on the Potomac. The next month, after gaining some advantage at first, they met with a reverse at Belmont, Missouri. Kentucky had declared itself neutral; but the Confederates invaded the state, and erected strong fortifications at Columbus, on the Mississippi River.

7. **The Blockade.**—The Confederates were in great need of arms, ammunition, and many other articles. To prevent them from obtaining these, the Federal Government blockaded the whole Southern coast,—that is, kept up a strong naval force, to capture all vessels coming out or going in. Yet swift steamers often succeeded in running past the Federal vessels on dark nights, carrying out cotton to the West Indies, and bringing back what was most needed.

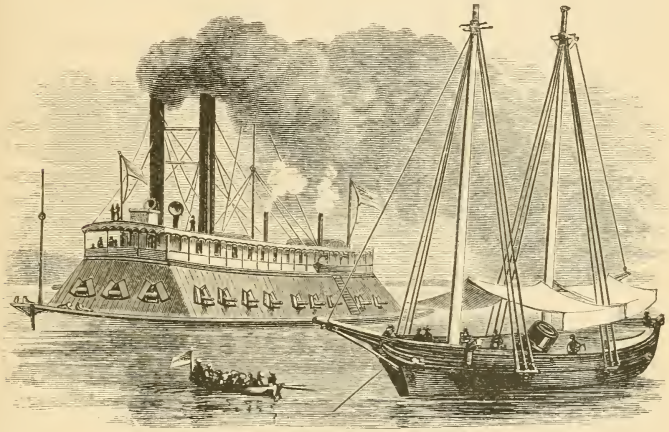
8. One of these blockade-runners took out two of the Confederate leaders, Mason and Slidell, as envoys to England and France. They succeeded in getting on board of a British steamer, but were overhauled by Captain Wilkes in the San Jacinto, and brought back to the United States. This made the British angry, and nearly led to a war with England, for which the Confederates were very anxious. But when the British government demanded the surrender

of the prisoners, the United States promptly gave them up, and thus war was avoided.

LESSON LIX.

MOVEMENTS OF 1862.

1. **At the beginning of 1862,** the Confederates had about 350,000 men in the field. Their main body lay at Manassas, not far from Bull Run (see map, p. 185);



Gunboat and Mortar-Boat.

and their batteries commanded the lower Potomac. The Federal forces at this time numbered about 575,000 men. Early in the year, the Federal General, George H. Thomas, gained an important victory at Mill Springs, Kentucky, and the Confederates were driven from the eastern part of that state.

2. Commodore Foote had for some time been prepar-

ing a fleet of gun-boats and mortar-boats for the Federal government, at Cairo (*ka'ro*), Illinois. In February, 1862, this fleet and a land force under General Grant captured Fort Henry, on the Tennessee River, and Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland, with many prisoners, cannon, and stores. See if you can find these forts on the map on p. 189. The enemy were thus obliged to withdraw from Kentucky; and Nashville, the capital of Tennessee, was soon after occupied by a Federal army.

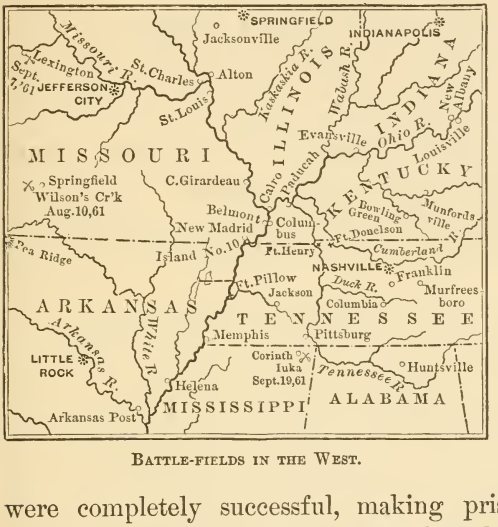
3. The same month, General Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough, with a strong land and naval force, made a successful descent on Roanoke Island (see map, p. 29). They met with a brave resistance, but succeeded in capturing 3,000 Confederates stationed on the island. From this place expeditions were made to various other points on the coast of North Carolina. The enemy's vessels were destroyed, their forces scattered, and their stores captured. Among the important places taken were Newbern and Beaufort (*bu'fort*).

4. **The Monitor.** — A large Federal fleet lay in Hampden Roads, near the mouth of the James River. One day a powerful iron-clad ram, belonging to the Confederates and called the Virginia, issued from Norfolk and steamed up to the fleet. The wooden vessels Cumberland and Congress were soon destroyed, their broadsides making no impression on the thick armor of their iron-clad foe. Darkness then came on, and the ram retired.

5. It was feared that the next day this terrible enemy would sink every vessel in the harbor, and then escape to ravage northern ports. But during the night the little floating battery Monitor, commanded by Captain Worden (*wur'den*), arrived from New York. The next morning

she boldly encountered the Virginia, drove her back disabled to Norfolk, and thus saved the rest of the fleet.—On the same day that the Virginia destroyed the Cumberland and Congress, General Curtis defeated the Confederates at Pea Ridge, Arkansas, after three days' desperate fighting.

6. The Confederates still commanded the lower Mississippi. They had strong fortifications on Island No. 10 in that river, between the Kentucky and the Missouri shore. General Pope and Commodore Foote undertook the capture of this important post. They were completely successful, making prisoners of over 5,000 Confederates, who had been forced to evacuate the island. The gun-boats then descended the river, and defeated a fleet of the enemy; and the city of Memphis, Tennessee, immediately surrendered.



BATTLE-FIELDS IN THE WEST.

7. **Battle of Shiloh.**—Following up the capture of Forts Henry and Donelson, General Grant moved southward. On the sixth of April, the enemy attacked his army on the field of Shiloh. The first day of the fight, the Confederates drove the national forces to the Tennes-

see River, killed and captured great numbers of them, and threatened the whole army with destruction. The gun-boats, however, checked the enemy; and during the night Grant was reënforced by an army under General Buell, which had marched from Nashville. Resuming the battle the next day, he drove back the enemy, who retreated to Corinth in the northeastern part of Mississippi. Followed thither by the Federal forces, they destroyed their magazine and evacuated the place.

8. Early in April, Fort Pulaski, the chief defence of the city of Savannah, was taken from the Confederates. This was followed by the more important capture of New Orleans, by Admiral Farragut, who ran past the forts below the city with part of his fleet amid a storm of shot and shells. The forts soon surrendered; and the gun-boats, ascending the river, took other important places.

LESSON LX.

MOVEMENTS OF 1862 (CONTINUED).

1. **McClellan's Peninsula Campaign.**—The army of the Potomac had been preparing through the winter for an advance on the Confederate capital. When they commenced moving, the enemy fell back to the Rappahannock River (see map, p. 185). McClellan thought he could reach Richmond most easily by the way of the peninsula between the James and the York River. Accordingly, he transported his troops to Fortress Monroe, at the mouth of the James, and began his march from that point. The enemy resisted his advance at Yorktown and Williamsburg, but were obliged to fall back, and the

Federal forces at length arrived within seven miles of Richmond.

2. Here McClellan stopped and called for reënforcements; but the government could not send him any, for Washington was threatened. On the 31st of May, the Confederates attacked him at Fair Oaks. They were repulsed, but McClellan's loss was large. The unhealthy swamps in which the Federal army lay, were also rapidly thinning its ranks.

3. McClellan now found it necessary to change his base to the James River, where he could have the protection of the gun-boats and wait for more men. While making this movement, he was fiercely attacked by the enemy. A succession of bloody battles followed, lasting seven days. It was only with great loss and suffering that the National forces were at last brought to the James River.

4. **Lee's First Invasion.**—Richmond was now safe, and General Lee with his main body moved to the north to take Washington. The troops left for the defence of the Capital had been placed under General Pope, but they were much inferior to the enemy in number. McClellan was at once ordered back to the support of this force, but before he arrived a series of desperate battles had been fought. Pope saved Washington, but it was at the cost of 20,000 men and some of the bravest of the Federal officers.

5. General Lee at once pushed across the Potomac into Maryland, and occupied Frederick and Hagerstown (see map, p. 185). He thought that the people of Maryland would receive him with joy and swell the ranks of his army. He soon found he was mistaken. McClellan was on his track, and on the 14th of September he was

obliged to give battle to the National forces at South Mountain. A hard-earned victory was won by the Union army, and the enemy fell back behind Antietam [*an-te'-tam*] Creek.

6. **"Stonewall Jackson,"** one of the ablest of the Confederate generals, had been sent against Harper's Ferry before the battle of South Mountain. Having taken it and its garrison of over 11,500 men, he rejoined Lee in time for the great battle of Antietam, September 17th, 1862. The loss on both sides at Antietam was severe, but the advantage was with the National forces. Lee withdrew his army, unmolested, across the Potomac, having lost in his Maryland campaign not far from 30,000 men.

7. McClellan was now superseded by General Burnside. He resolved to try the advance to Richmond by way of Fredericksburg, which you will find on the Rappahannock River, on the map, p. 185. As his army gathered on one side of the river, Lee's appeared on the other. Before Burnside was able to procure pontoons to cross the river, the enemy had fortified themselves strongly on the heights back of the city. The most heroic efforts were put forth by the Union army to carry these heights, but without success, and Burnside was obliged to recross the river, with a loss of 12,000 men. Thus, at the end of 1862, the army of the Potomac was as far from Richmond as ever.

LESSON LXI.

MOVEMENTS OF 1862 (CONTINUED) AND 1863.

1. **Western Movements.**—In the latter part of 1862, two Confederate armies, under Generals Kirby Smith and Bragg, overran Tennessee and Kentucky. After gaining victories at Richmond and Munfordsville, Kentucky, they united at Frankfort, the capital of the state. Cincinnati was saved only by the energy of General Wallace. Buell, who had followed Bragg from Tennessee with a Union army, occupied Louisville, and thus saved it from plunder. After ravaging the country and forcing into his ranks all whom he could, Bragg fell back into East Tennessee, with a large train of wagons laden with spoils.

2. Meanwhile, Grant and his command had not been idle. In September General Rosecrans defeated the Confederates at I-u'ka, Mississippi, and the next month repulsed them with great loss at Corinth. Rosecrans was now ordered to supersede Buell, and on the 31st of December he gave battle to Bragg at Murfreesboro, Tennessee. For three fearful days victory was doubtful, but at last it was secured to the Union, the Confederate army retreating on the night of January 3d.

3. **Financial Measures.**—A million and a quarter dollars a day were needed to carry on the war. To raise this vast sum, Congress increased the duties on various imported articles, laid taxes on incomes and manufactures, and required stamps to be placed on deeds, bonds, mortgages, &c. They also authorized the issue of government bonds and United States notes, or "green-backs", to a

large amount. The banks had some time before suspended specie payment,—that is, had ceased to pay out gold or silver. Gold, therefore, commanded a premium; $100 in gold, at one time during the war, was worth $298 in paper money.

4. The 1st of January, 1863, was made memorable by a proclamation of President Lincoln. By authority given him by Congress, he declared slavery abolished in all states then in insurrection, except in such parts as were held by the Federal Government.

5. **Hooker's Campaign.**—Early in 1863, General Hooker was placed in command of the army of the Potomac, which still lay opposite Fredericksburg. In April Hooker assumed the offensive, and, crossing the Rappahannock, gave battle to the enemy at Chancellorsville (see map, p. 185), on the 2d and 3d of May. The conflict was disastrous to the National army, which was obliged to recross the Rappahannock with a loss of 11,000 men. In this battle the Confederate General, "Stonewall Jackson", received a mortal wound.

6. **Lee's Second Invasion.** — After repulsing Hooker, Lee a second time invaded Maryland. Crossing that state he advanced into southern Pennsylvania, and seized Chambersburg and York. The Pennsylvanians rose to defend their native soil; and General Meade, who had now taken Hooker's place, followed close on the invaders. Lee found it necessary to give battle at Gettysburg; you will find this place on the map, on page 185. The struggle lasted three days (July 1st—3d), and resulted in a complete victory to the Union arms. Lee fell back beyond the Rappahannock, and the Federal army again took position on that river.

7. **Grant's Mississippi Campaign.**—An unsuc-

cessful attack had been made, at the close of 1862, on the strongly fortified city of Vicksburg, held by the Confederates. Shortly afterward the attack was renewed by General Grant, with a strong land and naval force. In May, 1863, Grant gained a succession of victories in Mississippi, and drove the Confederates into their intrenchments at Vicksburg, which he now resolved to reduce by siege.

8. The Confederate commander at Vicksburg held out as long as possible, in hope of aid. But no aid came; provisions grew scarce; and on the 4th of July he was obliged to surrender with his whole garrison of over 30,000 men.

SCENE OF GRANT'S MISSISSIPPI CAMPAIGN.

9. Four days later, Port Hudson, a strong Confederate post in Louisiana (see map) surrendered to General Banks. The Mississippi was thus at length opened; and these victories, following closely on Lee's defeat in Pennsylvania, filled the North with joy.

LESSON LXII.

MOVEMENTS OF 1863 (CONTINUED).

1. **The Draft.**—In the summer of 1863, to obtain the necessary men for the army, President Lincoln, by the authority of Congress, ordered a draft,—that is, that

a certain number should be drawn by lot from the whole body of citizens, who should be compelled either to go to the war themselves or to furnish substitutes. This gave rise to riots in different quarters.

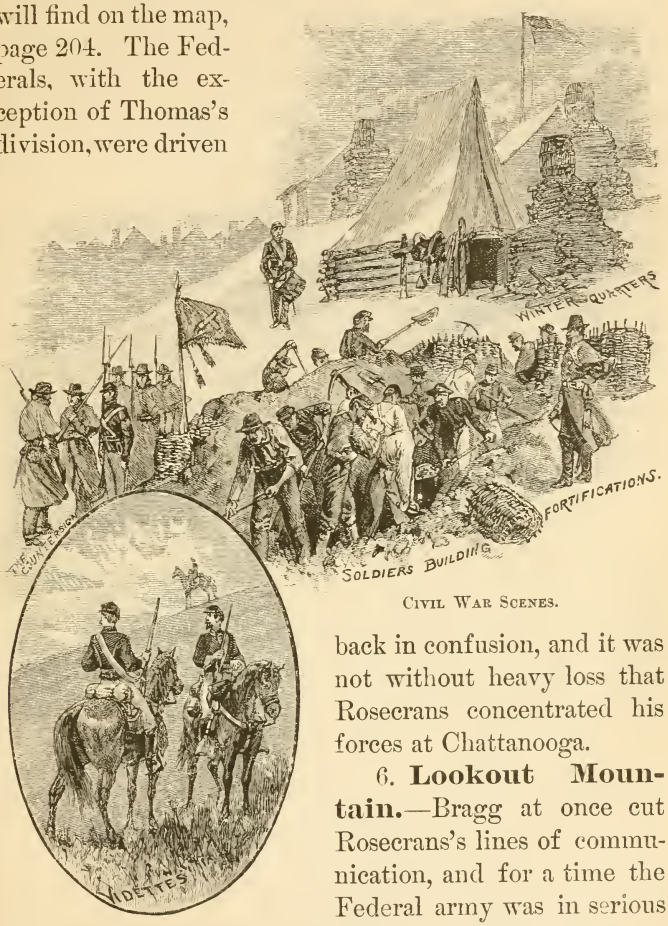
2. When the draft commenced in New York city, July 13th, a great mob collected, attacked the buildings in which the lots were being drawn, burned down many houses, and committed fiendish outrages. For three days they had control of the city, the militia having gone to Pennsylvania, at the President's call, to aid in repelling Lee. At the end of that time, a sufficient force was assembled to put down the marauders and restore order.

3. **Morgan's Raid.**—In June of this same year, the partisan leader Morgan, with 2,500 Confederates, made a raid through southern Ohio. They proposed, after plundering and destroying all that lay in their path, to recross the Ohio River and join Lee in Maryland. Their plans were frustrated by the brave men of Ohio and a Union force which had followed the invaders from Kentucky. Morgan was defeated and captured, July 26th.

4. Active operations were carried on by both parties on the Atlantic coast. The Confederates tried to recapture Newbern, but were repulsed. A fleet of National ironclads and a strong land-force under General Gillmore were sent to Charleston harbor. Several batteries of the enemy were taken, and Fort Sumter was furiously bombarded till its walls crumbled. A destructive fire was also opened by the Union batteries on the city of Charleston, which was abandoned by most of its inhabitants.

5. In June, Rosecrans, whose army had remained at Murfreesboro, again took the field against Bragg, and obliged him to fall back, first to Chattanooga in the southeastern part of Tennessee, and then to northwestern

Georgia. Here Bragg, having been largely reënforced, suddenly fell on the Federal army, near Chickamauga Creek, which you will find on the map, page 204. The Federals, with the exception of Thomas's division, were driven



Civil War Scenes.

back in confusion, and it was not without heavy loss that Rosecrans concentrated his forces at Chattanooga.

6. **Lookout Mountain.**—Bragg at once cut Rosecrans's lines of communication, and for a time the Federal army was in serious danger. General Hooker, however, with reënforcements from the army of the Poto-

mac, succeeded in opening the Tennessee River, so that supplies could be brought in. Soon afterward, General Grant, who had superseded Rosecrans, arrived at Chattanooga. Finding that a large division had left Bragg's army, he took the field, gained two brilliant victories, and drove the enemy to Ringgold, Georgia. The first of these victories was won by Hooker's men on Lookout Mountain, at such a height that they were hidden by the clouds from the spectators below. (See map, p. 204.)

7. The division that left Bragg, under General Longstreet, hastened toward Knoxville, about 100 miles northeast of Chattanooga. Burnside was here with an army which he had employed in driving the enemy from northeastern Tennessee. The Confederates made a fierce attack on the Union forces, but were repulsed, and then laid siege to the city. It was for a time hard pressed, but was at last relieved by General Sherman, who had moved with a large force from Chattanooga after Bragg's defeat.

8. Missouri and Arkansas were throughout most of this year the scenes of war and violence. Contending armies overran both states, and guerrillas and marauders followed in their track, committing outrages of every kind. Here also the Federal arms were successful, and by the close of the year the greater part of both states was restored to the Union.

LESSON LXIII.

MOVEMENTS OF 1864.

1. **Red River Expedition.**—Early in 1864, General Banks, with a large army supported by a powerful

fleet under Admiral Porter, set out from New Orleans, to open the Red River and drive the Confederates from western Louisiana. As long as the army was protected by the dreaded gun-boats, it met with no difficulty, and succeeded in taking several important posts. But soon after the Federals left the river, their advance, which was some miles distant from the main body, was furiously attacked (April 8th) by the enemy in front and on both flanks, and routed with great loss.

2. The next day, the attack was renewed on the main body, but General Smith's division saved the exhausted army, and enabled it to reach the river. The expedition was abandoned. The fleet turned back, and was greatly annoyed on its return by hostile batteries. After it ascended the river, the water had fallen; and it was only with great difficulty and by the construction of a dam that the gun-boats were got over the rapids.

3. **Several other advantages** were gained by the Confederates early in the year, particularly in Tennessee. Among these was the capture of Fort Pillow, on the Mississippi River, 70 miles above Memphis. Plymouth, North Carolina, was also taken by a Confederate force, assisted by the iron-clad ram Albemarle. The Albemarle was afterward sunk by Lieutenant Cushing, who exploded a torpedo under her.

4. On the 3d of March, 1864, General Grant was raised to the highest rank in the army of the United States,—that of Lieutenant-General. Turning over the large force which lay in and about Chattanooga to General Sherman, with directions to advance on Atlanta, Georgia, he hastened to the army of the Potomac, to move on the Confederate capital.

5. **Fall of Atlanta.**—Sherman was soon in the

field. By a succession of masterly movements, now outflanking the enemy and now forcing them from their position by hard blows, he at last drove them to their fortifications before Atlanta, and laid siege to the city. Three furious attacks were made on the besieging force, but without success. Sherman having finally succeeded in cutting the communications of the enemy and severing a large detachment from the main body, the Confederates evacuated the city, and on the 2d of September the National forces entered it in triumph.

6. **Grant's Advance on Richmond.**—Grant, with the army of the Potomac, advanced upon Richmond by way of the Wilderness, west of Chancellorsville (see map, p. 185). Lee gave him battle, May 5th, 6th, 7th, but was obliged to fall back. Hard fighting, with fearful loss on both sides, was continued day after day, till at last Lee was forced to Richmond. Grant then withdrew his army south of the Potomac, and tried to take Petersburg. He was prevented from so doing by a strong force thrown into its defences by Lee.

7. In connection with the attack on Richmond, two attempts, both unsuccessful, were made by the Federals on Lynchburg, Virginia. Hunter, in retreating from the latter of these, left the valley of the Shenando'ah River undefended; and General Early, with 20,000 men, seized the opportunity to invade Maryland the third time. Plundering as he went, he approached within a few miles of Baltimore, and a detachment of his army even entered the suburbs of Washington. They were speedily repulsed, and the whole body soon afterward crossed the Potomac with their booty.

8. A Federal column started in pursuit, gained some advantage at first, but was finally driven back. Again

(July 29th) Early threw part of his force across the Potomac. Not till General Sheridan was intrusted with its defence, was the Shenandoah valley secured to the Union.

9. Before day on the 19th of October, 1864, the Federal army of the Shenandoah was suddenly attacked by the enemy at Cedar Creek, thrown into confusion and rout. It was then that Sheridan made his famous ride of twenty miles from Winchester, and by his presence turned defeat into a signal victory, taking many guns and prisoners. Beaten in all his encounters with Sheridan, Early at last relinquished the valley to his antagonist.

LESSON LXIV.

MOVEMENTS OF 1864 (CONTINUED).

1. **The Alabama sunk.**—The summer of 1864 was signalized by the destruction of the Alabama, a Confederate privateer built in England, commanded by Captain Semmes, which had been roaming the seas, pillaging and burning American merchantmen. She was sunk by the Kearsarge, after a short contest, off the coast of France. Two other privateers, the Florida and the Georgia, were captured during the year by National vessels.

2. **Siege of Petersburg.**—Meanwhile, Grant and his army were hard at work before Petersburg. A breach was made in the enemy's defences by the explosion of a mine; but, when the Union forces attempted to enter through the opening, they were driven back with a loss of 5,000 men. Expeditions were sent out to cut the railroads that supplied the enemy, and the Confederate lines were attacked at different points on both sides of

the James River, but no very great advantages were gained.

3. In August, **Admiral Farragut** distinguished himself by his achievements in Mobile Bay. This bay was defended by three Confederate forts, as many gun-boats, and the iron-clad ram Tennessee. Farragut ran past the forts, and captured or disabled the Confederate fleet, one gun-boat alone escaping. Supported by a land force, he then turned on the forts. One of these was blown up by its garrison, and the other two were obliged to yield to his furious bombardment. Thus the way was opened to Mobile.

4. **Lincoln's Reëlection.**—In the fall of 1864, Mr. Lincoln was reëlected President, over General McClellan, who ran against him. At the same time, Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, was chosen Vice-president.

5. **Sherman's March to the Sea.**—After taking Atlanta, Sherman allowed his army to rest for two months and a half, and then commenced one of the memorable movements of the war. Leaving men enough behind under General Thomas to protect Tennessee from the Confederate army which had been driven from Atlanta, he abandoned his lines in the interior and marched for the coast, sweeping a tract from twenty to sixty miles wide, destroying railroads, living on the country, and striking terror into the inhabitants. The enemy could make little resistance. Within a month the coast was reached, Fort McAllister near Savannah was taken, and communication was opened with the Federal fleet. The Confederates were obliged to evacuate Savannah, which on the 21st of December was occupied by the National army.

6. No sooner had Sherman moved from Atlanta than Hood, the Confederate commander, invaded Tennessee.

The Union forces were driven back from point to point, till at last they made a stand near Nashville. While Hood was preparing to blockade the river and cut the railroads, General Thomas attacked him (December 15th), drove him from his position in great disorder, and captured many cannon and prisoners. Hood then withdrew the remnants of his army into northern Alabama.

7. **Wilmington,** on the coast of North Carolina, had been a great resort of blockade-runners throughout the war. It was defended by Forts Fisher and Caswell. In December, 1864, Admiral Porter and General Butler set out to reduce these forts and take the city. The Federal fleet soon silenced the guns of Fort Fisher; but General Butler, thinking the works too strong to be taken by assault, gave up the undertaking. Some days afterward the attempt was renewed by General Terry, with complete success. The forts were taken, and on the 22d of February, 1865, the National flag waved over Wilmington.

8. Toward the close of 1864, various schemes were set on foot by Confederates in Canada, for injuring the people and property of the loyal states. One party made a raid on St. Albans [*awl'bunz*], in the northern part of Vermont, robbed the banks, and escaped across the frontier. Another party captured and burned two steamboats on Lake Erie. A third attempted to burn the city of New York by setting fire to several of the large hotels; the flames were put out, however, before much damage was done.

LESSON LXV.

CLOSING MOVEMENTS OF THE WAR.

1. **Sherman's March through the Carolinas.**—After a short rest at Savannah, Sherman's army were again in the field. They marched across South Carolina, taking Columbia, the capital of the state, on the 17th of

SHERMAN'S MARCH TO THE SEABOARD.

February, 1865. Thence they advanced into North Carolina. After two engagements with the enemy, who had concentrated to oppose their progress, they entered Goldsboro, and soon afterward occupied Raleigh, the capital of the state, the Confederate army falling back to the northwest.

2. Sherman's movements in his rear, and the near approach of Gillmore's batteries, warned the Confederate commander in Charleston that his position was no longer

safe. Accordingly, having set fire to the store-houses containing cotton, he evacuated the city and the forts in the harbor, which were occupied by the Federal army on the 18th of February. The bombardment of the city had continued 542 days.

3. General Sheridan, with part of his force, made a brilliant movement at this time up the Shenandoah valley. Routing a body of Confederates on his way, he rapidly advanced in the direction of Richmond, and destroyed the railroad and canal by which it received most of its supplies. Then, crossing the James, he joined the army before Petersburg.

4. The Confederate leaders, seeing that an overwhelming force was being brought against them, on the 25th of March made a desperate attempt to break Grant's lines and cut off part of his army. They were at first partially successful, but were finally repulsed. General Grant, in turn, pushed the enemy vigorously, and advanced his lines.

5. **Close of the War.**—On the 2d of April, an attack was made by the Federal forces along the whole line in front of Petersburg, and the Confederates were driven from their intrenchments. Petersburg and Richmond could be held no longer, and that same night they were evacuated by the Confederates. It was felt that now the war must soon terminate.

6. Lee's army retreated toward Lynchburg, where it was intended to make another stand; but Sheridan intercepted the fugitives, completely routed them, and took several thousand prisoners. Lee was now forced to surrender, and on the 9th of April, 1865, his whole army laid down their arms. This joyful intelligence was followed by news of the surrender of Mobile, and important successes gained in North Carolina, Alabama, and Georgia,

by large detachments of Federal troops under Generals Stoneman and Wilson.

7. **Assassination of President Lincoln.**—In the midst of these glad tidings came the appalling news that President Lincoln had been assassinated. He was shot on the evening of April 14th, in the theatre at Washington, by John Wilkes Booth, a violent partisan of the South, and died the next morning. Never was sorrow so intense and general seen throughout the land, as when this terrible event was announced. The same night that the President was murdered, an attempt was made on the life of Mr. Seward, the Secretary of State, at that time confined to his bed by illness. The assassin failed in his purpose, though he wounded Mr. Seward and three others who were present.

8. Strenuous efforts were made to arrest the murderers. After some days, Booth and an accomplice were traced to a barn, and summoned to surrender. The latter did so; but Booth, refusing, was shot down, while in the act of aiming at his pursuers. The accomplice referred to and three others were found guilty by a military court and hanged. Three others connected with the plot were sentenced to imprisonment for life, and one to hard labor for six years.

LESSON LXVI.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. The day after President Lincoln's assassination, **Andrew Johnson,** of Tennessee, took the oath of office as President of the United States. He had risen from an humble rank in life, through various offices, to

be governor of his state and United States senator. He had remained loyal throughout the war, and while acting as military governor of Tennessee under President Lincoln had been elected Vice-president of the United States.

2. Lee's surrender was the death-blow of the Confederacy. Johnson's army of about 30,000 men, which had opposed Sherman in North Carolina, laid down their arms April 26th, and the next month the remaining Confederate forces followed their example. The war was now at an end. Jefferson Davis tried to escape to the coast, but was intercepted in Georgia by Wilson's cavalry. He was confined for a time under an indictment for treason, but was finally released on bail. His trial was deferred, and at last given up altogether.

3. On the close of the war, government raised the blockade of the Southern ports, reduced the navy, and disbanded a great part of the army. A debt of about $2\frac{3}{4}$ billions of dollars had been incurred, but this did not discourage the people, rejoicing as they did at the return of peace. By a proclamation of the President, issued May 29, 1865, pardon was granted to most of those who had taken part in the secession movement, and there was a general disposition in the South to yield to the new state of affairs.

4. In 1865, slavery was abolished in the United States. This was effected by an amendment to the constitution, proposed by Congress before the close of the war, and ratified by three-fourths of the states. Different bills were afterward passed for the protection of the freedmen.

5. A society known as Fenians had for some time existed in Ireland, the United States, and elsewhere, formed for the purpose of wresting Ireland from the British crown and making it independent. In June, 1866, bodies of

Fenians residing in the United States crossed the frontier and invaded Canada. After some skirmishing, they were driven back. Though the English had aided the Confederates in the recent war, President Johnson at once issued a proclamation that the neutrality of the country must be preserved, and took such measures as put a stop to the movement.

6. During 1866 and 1867, there were much excitement and bitter feeling on the question of Reconstruction,—that is, of restoring the seceded states to their former position in the Union. The President and Congress differed widely in opinion, the latter insisting, among other things, on further guarantees of the rights of the freedmen. It was only after a long struggle that most of the seceded states were, in July, 1868, restored to their former relations in the Union.

7. In 1867, **Russian America,** an immense territory of nearly 600,000 square miles in the northwestern part of North America, was bought by the United States for $7,200,000 in gold. It is a cold and rugged region, valuable chiefly for its fisheries and furs.

8. **Johnson impeached.**—The hostility between Congress and the President became greater than ever in the spring of 1868. On the President's attempting to remove the Secretary of War, the majority in Congress declared that he had violated a law which made the consent of the senate necessary to such removals, and impeached him of "high crimes and misdemeanors", with the view of removing him from office. He was tried by the senate; but, two-thirds of that body having failed to pronounce him guilty, he was acquitted.

9. On the approach of the presidential election of 1868, the republicans nominated for president General

Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois; for vice-president, Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana. The democratic candidates were Horatio Seymour, of New York, and General Francis P. Blair, of Missouri. The republican candidates were successful, and on the 4th of March, 1869, General Grant was inaugurated.

LESSON LXVII.

GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. **General Grant** was rewarded with the presidency on account of his services as a soldier. He had received a thorough military education at West Point, and had gone through the Mexican War with distinction, but had retired from the army after reaching the rank of captain. When the Civil War broke out, he was engaged in business in Illinois, little thinking he would ever be president.

2. President Grant agreed with Congress on most public questions. The Constitution was amended so as to secure the right of voting to colored men equally with white citizens. Such of the seceded states as were still out of the Union, were readmitted; and in the spring of 1870 all the states were, as of old, represented in Congress.

3. **The Pacific Railroad.**—May, 1869, witnessed the completion of a great work. This was the Pacific Railroad, over 1,900 miles in length. It joined San Francisco, on the Pacific coast, with the Missouri River, at Omaha [*o'ma-haw*]—and, by its eastern connections, with the Atlantic seaboard. Government had to help build it, for it was no small undertaking to run so long a road through an uninhabited country, and across two great

mountain-chains, at the height of a mile or more above the level of the sea. There were great rejoicings, and with good reason, when the last spike was driven.

4. **Alabama Claims.**—In 1871, an important treaty was made at Washington, to settle several disputed points between the United States and Great Britain. Chief among these were the "Alabama claims". The Alabama and other privateers fitted out in British ports during the Civil War had done great damage to American vessels, and for this the United States called on England to pay. The question was left to arbiters of different nations, who met at Geneva, Switzerland, in 1872, and awarded to the United States $15,500,000 in gold.

5. A terrible fire laid half of the city of Chicago in ruins, in the fall of 1871. About a year afterward, Boston suffered from a similar visitation. Some of the finest blocks of buildings in the country were thus destroyed, but the energy of the citizens soon raised them again from their ashes.

6. In November, 1872, General Grant was reëlected president, and Senator Wilson, of Massachusetts, was chosen vice-president. Horace Greeley, a "liberal republican", long prominent as founder and editor of the New York Tribune, ran against President Grant on the democratic ticket. He survived the excitements of the campaign only for a few weeks.

7. **The Credit Mobilier.**—About this time a great scandal was occasioned by the "Credit Mobilier". This was a stock company that had made large profits by building the Union Pacific Railroad. It came out that some of the stock had passed into the hands of members of Congress; and it was suspected that their votes might thus have been corruptly influenced in questions relating

to the road. Congress investigated the matter, and found out things that were damaging to several prominent public servants.

8. **The Mo'doc Indians,** living on the southern borders of Oregon, gave trouble early in Grant's second

Fort and Indian Trading-Post in the Far West.

term. They had agreed to leave their lands and go on a reservation; but, when the United States authorities attempted to remove them, they resisted, and took refuge in "lava-beds", where it was hard to reach them.

Peace-commissioners were sent to treat with them; but at a meeting held in April, 1873, the treacherous savages violated the flag of truce, and killed one of the commissioners and the commander of the department. The war was then pushed till the murderers were taken; in the fall, they were hanged.

9. Political difficulties occurred during Grant's second term in several of the southern states,—particularly in Louisiana. Here two rival governors claimed to be elected; and their partisans came into violent collision. The president sent down Federal troops to support the claimant whom he regarded as elected; but this was looked upon by many as an improper interference. The trouble was renewed from time to time; and at the close of Grant's administration there were two organized state governments, each claiming to be the legal one.

10. Among the remaining events of this administration, the principal were as follows:—

A disastrous panic in 1873, followed by a business depression for several years.

A difficulty with Spain, in consequence of the capture of a vessel bearing the American flag by one of her war-steamers. Spain alleged that the vessel in question was carrying men and arms to help the Cubans, who were trying to throw off the Spanish yoke. This difficulty was peaceably settled, but not till after about a hundred men had been taken ashore and executed.

The admission of Colorado [*kol-o-rah'do*] into the Union, as the thirty-eighth state.

A war with the Sioux [*soo*], during which General Custer and his detachment were cut off.

11. **The Centennial Year, 1876,** was celebrated with a grand Exhibition of the industries of all nations at Philadelphia. It remained open six months, attracted exhibitors and visitors from all parts of the world, and was every way creditable to the people whose hundredth year of national existence it commemorated.

12. For President Grant's successor, the republicans nominated Governor Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio; the

democrats, Governor Samuel J. Tilden, of New York. William A. Wheeler, of New York, was the republican nominee for the vice-presidency, and Governor Hendricks, of Indiana, the democratic. The election, held in November, 1876, was attended with much excitement, for some of the returns were questioned, and the result was long in doubt. The disputed certificates having been referred to a commission appointed to decide on them, Hayes and Wheeler were declared to have a majority of the electoral votes. The inauguration took place, March 5, 1877.

LESSON LXVIII.

HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. **President Hayes** was born in Ohio. He was a lawyer by profession, and had served with distinction in the Civil War. He had twice been chosen to represent his native state in Congress, and was serving in his third term as governor of Ohio when elected president.

2. Political troubles in Louisiana and South Carolina first required the president's attention. In each of these states there were two rival governors, both claiming to have been rightfully elected. In each the republican governor was sustained by Federal troops. These President Hayes determined to withdraw, leaving to the people of each state the control of their own local affairs. The result was the establishment of the democratic governors and the restoration of peace.

3. The wide-spread depression of business had obliged many of the railroad companies to reduce the wages of those in their employ; and this, in the summer of 1877,

led to a general strike. For a time, in some parts of the country, no trains were allowed to run. Riots took place at Pittsburgh, St. Louis, Chicago, and elsewhere, and much valuable property belonging to the railroad companies was destroyed. It was not without the aid of the Federal government and national troops that these disturbances were put down.

4. **Silver made a Legal Tender.**—When the banks ceased to pay out gold and silver in 1861 (p. 194), coin for the most part passed out of circulation; but on the 1st of January, 1879, the banks resumed specie payments, and gold as well as silver once more came into general use. Before this, Congress had authorized the coinage of the standard silver dollar, and made it a "legal tender", so that debts could be paid in silver.

5. **Ute War.**—In the northwestern part of Colorado lived the Utes, a tribe of Indians who preferred hunting and their wild life to farm-labor. In 1879 the United States agent insisted on their tilling the soil; and, when they showed opposition and hostility, a small body of troops advanced to support his authority. Irritated by this, as well as by the encroachments of white miners on their reservation, the Utes murdered the agent, attacked the troops, and killed the commanding officer. Reënforcements promptly arrived; and with the aid of these, and through the efforts of a friendly chief, peace was finally restored.

6. **New Treaty with China.**—A strong feeling against excessive Chinese immigration prevailed in California during Hayes's term. Great numbers of Chinese were constantly crossing the Pacific to that state; and, their wants being few, they were willing to take lower wages than American workmen could live on, thus entire-

ly shutting out from the latter certain branches of industry. To meet this difficulty, a new treaty was made with China in 1880, securing to the United States control of the immigration from the former country.

7. **At the presidential election of 1880** the republican ticket was successful. General James A. Garfield, of Ohio, was chosen president, and General Chester A. Arthur, of New York, vice-president,—over the democratic candidates, General Winfield S. Hancock, of Pennsylvania, and the Hon. William H. English, of Indiana. General Garfield was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1881. On July 2d, he was shot down in Washington by a disappointed office-seeker, and died, after hovering for eleven weeks between life and death, September 19th.

8. **General Garfield** was born in Ohio in 1831. His youth was a continuous struggle with poverty, and he could ill afford to spare from his labors the three months he devoted each winter to attendance at ths district school. When fourteen years of age he learned the carpenter's trade, and his seventeenth summer was passed as a driver on the Ohio Canal. From the tow-path he rose, as we have seen, to the presidential chair, and the secret of his success is to be found in his persevering industry and his unchanging adherence to principle.

LESSON LXIX.

ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. By the death of General Garfield, the vice-president, **General Chester A. Arthur,** became president

of the United States. Mr. Arthur was another self-made man. After his graduation from Union College in 1849, he supported himself by teaching while pursuing the study of law. He began the practice of his profession in New York City, served his adopted state in a conspicuous manner during the Civil War, and between 1871 and 1878 was collector of customs for the port of New York.

2. The feeling against Chinese immigration that prevailed during President Hayes's term led to the passage of a bill suspending it for ten years. This bill was approved by the president, and became a law in April, 1882.

3. Another bill, providing for the punishment of bigamy and polygamy by fine and imprisonment, was also approved by President Arthur.

4. In his annual message to Congress, December 4, 1882, the president recommended the abolition of certain taxes, the reduction of duties, and the adoption of measures calculated to improve the condition of the Indians.

5. President Arthur also strongly urged Congress to adopt some means of reform in the method of appointment to public offices. Accordingly, both Houses at once began discussing the subject of civil-service reform, and a Civil-Service Reform Bill, providing that public positions shall be filled by competitive examinations in stead of by the recommendations of Congressmen, passed both Houses, and in July, 1883, went into operation as a law. Great good has already been accomplished by it.

6. A bill also passed the Senate on January 25, 1884, providing that, in case both the president and the vice-president should die or be disabled, the duties of presi-

dent should be discharged by a member of the Cabinet, the sucession to be in the following order: the secretary of state, the secretary of the treasury, the secretary of war, the attorney-general, the postmaster-general, the secretary of the navy, and the secretary of the interior.

STATES ADMITTED UNDER THE CONSTITUTION.

(For the Thirteen Original States, see p. 73.)

14. Vermont	1791.	27. Texas	1845.
15. Kentucky	1792.	28. Florida	1845.
16. Tennessee	1796.	29. Iowa	1846.
17. Ohio	1802.	30. Wisconsin	1848.
18. Louisiana	1812.	31. California	1850.
19. Indiana	1816.	32. Minnesota	1858.
20. Mississippi	1817.	33. Oregon	1859.
21. Illinois	1818.	34. Kansas	1861.
22. Alabama	1819.	35. West Virginia	1863.
23. Maine	1820.	36. Nevada	1864.
24. Missouri	1821.	37. Nebraska	1867.
25. Arkansas	1836.	38. Colorado	1876.
26. Michigan	1837.		

PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

No.	Name.	State.	In Office.	Born.	Died.
1.	George Washington	Virginia	1789–1797	1732	1799
2.	John Adams	Massachusetts	1797–1801	1735	1826
3.	Thomas Jefferson	Virginia	1801–1809	1743	1826
4.	James Madison	Virginia	1809–1817	1751	1836
5.	James Monroe	Virginia	1817–1825	1758	1831
6.	John Quincy Adams	Massachusetts	1825–1829	1767	1848
7.	Andrew Jackson	Tennessee	1829–1837	1767	1845
8.	Martin Van Buren	New York	1837–1841	1782	1862
9.	William Henry Harrison	Ohio	1841–1 mo.	1773	1841
10.	John Tyler	Virginia	1841–1845	1790	1862
11.	James Knox Polk	Tennessee	1845–1849	1795	1849
12.	Zachary Taylor	Louisiana	1849–1850	1784	1850
13.	Millard Fillmore	New York	1850–1853	1800	1874
14.	Franklin Pierce	New Hampshire	1853–1857	1804	1869
15.	James Buchanan	Pennsylvania	1857–1861	1791	1868
16.	Abraham Lincoln	Illinois	1861–1865	1809	1865
17.	Andrew Johnson	Tennessee	1865–1869	1808	1875
18.	Ulysses S. Grant	Illinois	1869–1877	1822	....
19.	Rutherford B. Hayes	Ohio	1877–1881	1822	....
20.	James A. Garfield	Ohio	1881–4 mo.	1831	1881
21.	Chester A. Arthur	New York	1881–	1830	....

Questions on the above Tables.—What was the first state admitted after the formation of the Constitution? What other states were admitted during Washington's administration? When was Ohio admitted? What two states were admitted during Madison's administration? What five, during Monroe's? What state became a member of the Union in 1836? In 1837? When did Texas become one of the United States? What other state was admitted the same year? Give the dates of the admission of Iowa, Wisconsin, and California. Name in order the states that have been admitted since California. Name the presidents of the United States in order. Which of these were elected for two terms? What state has furnished the most presidents to the Union? What states have furnished the next greatest number? Which of the presidents died in office, and therefore did not serve their full term? Which were vice-presidents, and obtained the office by the death of their predecessor? Which of the presidents are still living?

CHRONOLOGICAL RECORD,

EMBRACING THE PRINCIPAL EVENTS OF AMERICAN HISTORY, ARRANGED IN THE ORDER OF THEIR OCCURRENCE.

A. D.

1492. Oct. 12, Columbus discovers America (St. Salvador).
1497. June 24, mainland of America (Newfoundland) discovered by John and Sebastian Cabot, under a commission from Henry VII., of England.
1498. Columbus discovers the mainland of South America.
1499. Voyage of Amerigo Vespucci.
1501. Coast of N. America explored by Cortereal, a Portuguese.
1507. The New World first called AMERICA, after Amerigo Vespucci.
1512. March 27, Florida discovered by Ponce de Leon.
1513. Sept. 26, Pacific Ocean discovered by Balboa.
1517. Mexico discovered by Francisco Fernandez.
1519. April, Cortez lands where Vera Cruz now stands.
1520. Magellan enters the Pacific, by the Strait of Magellan.
1521. August 13, Cortez takes the city of Mexico.
1524. Verazzani, a Florentine in the service of France, explores the coast from North Carolina to Nova Scotia.
1534. Cartier discovers the River St. Lawrence.
1539. De Soto commences his invasion at Tampa Bay.
1541. The Mississippi River discovered by De Soto.
1542. May 21, De Soto dies; is buried in the Mississippi.
1562. Huguenots attempt a settlement at Port Royal.
1564. Settlement of Huguenots on the St. John's, Fla.
1565. Spaniards found St. Augustine.
1576. Frobisher, an Englishman, seeks a northwest passage.
1579. First voyage of Sir Humphrey Gilbert; second, in 1583.
Sir Francis Drake explores the coast of New Albion (Oregon).
1584. First expedition sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh reaches Roanoke Island: country called Virginia.
1585. Raleigh's second expedition sent out under Grenville.
1587. Raleigh sends out a colony under White.
1589. Raleigh assigns his rights to the London Company.

1602. May 14, Gosnold discovers Cape Cod.
1606. Patent issued to London and Plymouth Companies.
1607. Plymouth Co. attempt to plant a colony at the mouth of the Kennebec.
First permanent English settlement made, at Jamestown, by London Co.
1608. Quebec founded by French under Champlain.
Capt. John Smith explores Chesapeake Bay.
1609. Lord Delaware appointed governor of Virginia.
Hendrik Hudson discovers the Hudson River.
1611. Cattle and hogs brought to Virginia from Europe.
1614. Dutch build a fort on Manhattan Island.
Capt. Smith explores the coast of New England.
1615. Dutch settle at Fort Orange (Albany).
1618. Dutch settle in New Jersey, near the Hudson.
1619. The "House of Burgesses," the first representative body in America, convenes at Jamestown, Virginia.
1620. Dec. 21, Pilgrims land at Plymouth.
1621. March, Pilgrims make a treaty with Massasoit.
Cotton first cultivated at Jamestown.
1622. Indian massacre in Virginia; 347 colonists killed. Grant made to Gorges and Mason of land from the St. Lawrence to the Merrimac.
1624. James I. dissolves the London Company.
1626. Swedish company chartered for colonizing America.
1628. Massachusetts Bay Colony founded. John Endicott settles at Salem.
Charlestown founded.
1630. Boston, Dorchester, Roxbury, and Cambridge, founded.
1632. Trading-posts established in Maryland.
1633. Connecticut settled. Dutch build a fort at Hartford; Plymouth settlers establish a trading-post at Windsor.
1634. Leonard Calvert colonizes Maryland.
1635. Emigration from Massachusetts to Connecticut.
1636. Rhode Island first settled, at Providence, by Roger Williams.
1637. The Pequod War.
1638. Delaware colonized by Swedes and Finns. Anne Hutchinson's followers settle on Rhode Island. Colony of New Haven founded.
1641. New Hampshire united with Massachusetts.
1643. Indian War in New Netherland.
Confederacy formed, under the name of "the United Colonies of New England." Swedes from Delaware settle in Pennsylvania.
1644. Indian War in Virginia.
1653. North Carolina first colonized, by Virginians.
1655. Dutch conquer the Swedes of Delaware.
1663. Carolina granted to Clarendon and others.
1664. Charles II. grants the whole country from the Connecticut to the Delaware to his brother, the Duke of York. New Amsterdam is taken,

and its name changed to New York. All the Dutch possessions pass into the hands of the English. New Jersey granted to Berkeley and Carteret.

1665. Allouez explores Lake Superior.
1670. Locke's Grand Model signed. South Carolina colonized.
1675. King Philip's War. Indian war in Virginia.
1676. King Philip killed; his tribe destroyed.
Bacon's Rebellion. Jamestown burned.
1679. New Hampshire made a royal province.
1680. Founding of Charleston.
1682. Pennsylvania settled. Philadelphia founded in 1683.
1685. Andros made governor of all New England.
1687. Andros tries to take away the charter of Connecticut.
1689. King William's War; lasts till 1697.
1690. Schenectady burned by French and Indians.
1692. Witch delusion in Salem, now Danvers.
1696. Rice first raised in Carolina.
1701. Detroit founded by the French.
1702. Queen Anne's War; lasts till 1713.
Mobile founded by French under D'Iberville.
1704. Deerfield, Mass., destroyed by French and Indians.
1718. New Orleans founded by the French.
1724. Vermont first settled, by emigrants from Massachusetts.
1729. N. and S. Carolina made separate governments. Massacre of French at Fort Rosalie (Natchez). Baltimore founded.
1730. The Natchez Indians exterminated by the French.
1732. George Washington born, Pope's Creek, Va.
1733. Georgia settled by Oglethorpe, at Savannah.
1744. King George's War; lasts till 1748.
1745. Colonists under Sir Wm. Pepperell take Louisburg.
1753. Washington's mission to the French forts.
1754. Fort Du Quesne begun by the English; taken and finished by the French. French and Indian War begins.
1755. Braddock's defeat.
1757. Montcalm takes Fort William Henry; massacre.
1758. Montcalm repulses Abercrombie at Ticonderoga.
English take Louisburg and Fort Du Quesne.
1759. English take Quebec. Wolfe and Montcalm fall.
1760. All Canada surrenders to the English.
1763. Peace of Paris ends the French and Indian War.
1765. Stamp Act passed; repealed, March, 1766.
1767. Duty laid on tea, glass, paper, and painters' colors.
1768. Sept. 27, British troops arrive at Boston.
1770. Boston Massacre. Duties removed, except on tea.
1773. Tea thrown overboard at Boston.

1774. Sept. 5, Continental Congress meet at Philadelphia.

1775. Revolutionary War commences, April 19, with battle of Lexington. May 10, Ethan Allen takes Ticonderoga. May 12, Warner takes Crown Point. May 21, Independence declared in N. C. June 15, Washington elected commander-in-chief. June 17, Battle of Bunker Hill. Dec. 31, unsuccessful attack on Quebec; Montgomery slain.

1776. March 17, British evacuate Boston; June 28, are repulsed at Charleston. July 4, Declaration of Independence. Aug. 27, Battle of Long Island. Sept. 15, British land on New York Island. Oct. 28, Battle of White Plains. Nov. 16, British take Fort Washington. Dec. 26, Battle of Trenton.

1777. Jan. 3, Battle of Princeton. La Fayette arrives in America. July 6, Burgoyne takes Ticonderoga. Aug. 3, St. Leger besieges Fort Stanwix. Aug. 6, Battle of Oriskany. Aug. 16, Battle of Bennington. Sept. 11, Battle of Brandywine. Sept. 19, First battle of Stillwater. Sept. 26, Howe enters Philadelphia. Oct. 4, Battle of Germantown. Oct. 7, Second battle of Stillwater. Oct. 17, Burgoyne's surrender. Dec. 11, Washington goes into winter quarters at Valley Forge.

1778. Feb. 6, Treaty with France signed. June 18, Philadelphia evacuated by the British. June 28, Battle of Monmouth. July 3, Massacre of Wyoming. July 11, French fleet arrives off Sandy Hook. Aug., Unsuccessful invasion of Rhode Island. Nov. 12, Massacre of Cherry Valley. Dec. 29, British take Savannah.

1779. British take Stony and Verplanck's Point. July, Tryon ravages Conn. July 15, Wayne recaptures Stony Point. Sept., Sullivan ravages the Indian country. Sept. 23, Paul Jones takes the Serapis. Oct., Americans repulsed at Savannah.

1780. May 12, Gen. Lincoln surrenders Charleston. July 10, French fleet arrives off Newport. Aug. 6, Battle of Hanging Rock. Aug. 16, Gates defeated near Camden. Sept. 23, Andre captured; discovery of Arnold's treason. Oct. 7, Battle of King's Mountain. Exploits of Marion.

1781. Jan., Arnold ravages Va. Jan. 17, Battle of Cowpens. Jan., Feb., Morgan and Greene's retreat. March 15, Battle of Guilford Court-House. April 25, Battle of Hobkirk's Hill. British posts in Carolina captured. Sept. 6, British take Forts Trumbull and Griswold, Conn. Sept. 8, Battle of Eutaw Springs. Oct., French and Americans besiege Cornwallis at Yorktown. Oct. 19, Surrender of Cornwallis.

1783. Sept. 3, Treaty of Peace signed between Great Britain and U. S. Nov. 3, Americans disband their army. Nov. 25, New York evacuated by the British. Dec. 23, Washington resigns his commission.

1787. Shay's Rebellion in Mass. Constitution of the United States framed by a convention at Philadelphia.

1788. First permanent settlement in Ohio, at Marietta.

1789. Government organized under the Federal Constitution. Washington elected first president. Cincinnati founded.
1790. Indian War; Gen. Harmer defeated in Indiana.
1791. St. Clair defeated by the Indians.
1792. Columbia River explored.
1794. Whiskey Rebellion in Pa. Gen. Wayne ends the Indian War.
1796. Washington's Farewell Address.
1797. John Adams inaugurated, second president.
1799. Naval engagements with French vessels.
Dec. 14, Death of Washington.
1800. Washington city made the capital. Treaty with France.
1801. Jefferson becomes third president. Tripolitan War.
1803. Louisiana purchased. United States frigate Philadelphia captured by the Tripolitans.
1804. The Philadelphia retaken by Decatur. Tripoli bombarded.
1807. Burr tried for treason, and acquitted.
U. S. frigate Chesapeake attacked by the Leopard.
1809. Madison inaugurated, fourth president.
1811. Harrison gains the battle of Tippecanoe.
1812. June 18, War with Great Britain declared. Hull's invasion of Canada, retreat, and surrender. Unsuccessful attack on Queenstown. United States gain brilliant naval victories.
1813. Americans defeated at Frenchtown; take York, Upper Canada; besieged in Fort Meigs; take Fort George; repulse the British at Sackett's Harbor; also, at Fort Stephenson. Sept. 10, Perry's great victory on Lake Erie. Oct. 5, Battle of the Thames. British take Forts George and Niagara. Jackson's campaign in the Creek country.
1814. July 5, Battle of Chippewa. July 25, Battle of Lundy's Lane. Americans besieged in Fort Erie. Aug. 24, Battle of Bladensburg; British enter Washington, and burn the public buildings. Sept. 11, Battle of Plattsburg. Sept. 13, British repulsed at Baltimore.
1815. Jan. 8, Battle of New Orleans. Feb. 18, Peace with Great Britain proclaimed. Decatur settles with the Barbary States.
1817. Monroe inaugurated, fifth president. Seminole War begins. Erie Canal commenced.
1819. Spain cedes Florida to the U. S.
1821. Missouri Compromise passed.
1823. Commodore Porter suppresses West Indian pirates.
1824. La Fayette visits America.
1825. John Quincy Adams inaugurated, sixth president.
1826. July 4, Death of John Adams and Jefferson.
1829. Jackson inaugurated, seventh president.
1832. Ravages of the cholera. Black Hawk's War. Nullification in S. C. United States Bank vetoed.
1833. Jackson removes the deposits from the United States Bank.

1835. Second war with Seminoles. Texan Revolution commences.
1837. United States recognizes independence of Texas. Van Buren inaugurated, eighth president. Financial distress. Troubles on the Canada line.
1841. Harrison, inaugurated as president March 4, dies April 4. Tyler succeeds.
1842. Northeastern boundary settled with England. Dorr's Rebellion in Rhode Island.
1845. Polk inaugurated, eleventh president.
1846. Mexican War commences. May 8, Battle of Palo Alto. May 9, Battle of Resaca de la Palma. Sept. 24, Capitulation of Monterey. Americans conquer California. Northwestern boundary settled with Great Britain.
1847. Feb. 23, Battle of Buena Vista. Mar. 27, Scott takes Vera Cruz. April 18, Battle of Cerro Gordo. Aug. 20, Contreras, Churubusco. Sept. 8, Molino del Rey. Sept. 13, Chapultepec. Sept. 14, Americans enter Mexico in triumph.
1848. Discovery of gold in California. July 4, Peace with Mexico proclaimed.
1849. Taylor inaugurated, twelfth president.
1850. Descent of Lopez on Cuba. July 9, Death of the president. Fillmore succeeds.
1852. Difficulty with England on the fishery question.
1853. Pierce inaugurated, fourteenth president. World's Fair. Perry enters the Bay of Jeddo.
1854. The Japanese make a treaty with the U. S. Kansas and Nebraska Bill passed. Missouri Compromise repealed.
1855. Troubles in Kansas.
1857. Buchanan inaugurated, fifteenth president. Revulsion in business. Mormon Rebellion.
1859. Expedition to Paraguay. John Brown seizes the U. S. arsenal at Harper's Ferry; is taken and, with six companions, hanged.
1860. Arrival of Japanese embassy. Dec. 20, Secession ordinance passed by South Carolina.
1861. January 9, Mississippi secedes; 10, Florida secedes; 11, Alabama secedes; 19, Georgia secedes; 26, Louisiana secedes.

February 1, Texas secedes; 4, Peace Conference assembles at Washington—"Confederacy" formed at Montgomery, Ala.; 8, Davis elected provisional president of "the Confederate States."

March 4, Lincoln inaugurated, sixteenth president.

April 13, Fall of Sumter; 15, President calls for 75,000 men; 17, Virginia secedes; 18, Confederates seize Harper's Ferry; 19, Volunteers attacked in Baltimore; 20, Confederates seize Norfolk navy-yard.

May 3, President calls for 82,748 men; 6, Arkansas secedes; 20, North Carolina secedes.

June 3, Union victory at Philippi, Va; 8, Tennessee secedes; 10, Union repulse at Big Bethel, Va.; 11, Union victory at Romney, Va.

JULY 5, Battle near Carthage, Mo.; 11, Union victory at Rich Mountain, Va.; 14, Union victory at Carrick's Ford, Va.; 20, Confederate Congress meets at Richmond; 21, Union defeat at Bull Run, Va.

AUGUST 10, Battle of Wilson's Creek, Mo.; 29, Forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C., captured.

SEPTEMBER 10, Union victory at Carnifex Ferry, Va.; 20, Confederates take Lexington, Mo.

OCTOBER 21, Union defeat at Ball's Bluff, Va.

NOVEMBER 7, Battle of Belmont, Mo.—Capture of Port Royal, S. C.; 8, Seizure of Mason and Slidell.

DECEMBER 20, Union victory at Dranesville, Va.; 30, N. Y. banks suspend specie payments.

1862. JANUARY 19, Union victory at Mill Springs, Ky.

FEBRUARY 6, Capture of Fort Henry, Tenn.; 8, Capture of Roanoke Island, N. C.; 16, Capture of Fort Donelson, Tenn.; 22, Davis inaugurated for a term of six years.

MARCH 6-8, Battle of Pea Ridge, Ark.; 8, Ram Virginia sinks the Cumberland and Congress; 9, Engagement between the Monitor and Virginia; 14, Capture of Newbern, N. C.; 23, Union victory at Winchester, Va.

APRIL 4, McClellan commences his Peninsular campaign; 6, 7, Battle of Shiloh; 7, Capture of Island No. 10, Miss. River; 11, Capture of Fort Pulaski, Ga.; 25, Capture of Beaufort, S. C.—Capture of New Orleans; 28, Capture of Forts Jackson and St. Philip, La.

MAY 4, Yorktown, Va., taken; 5, Union victory at Williamsburg, Va.; 9, Pensacola taken; 10, Gen. Wool takes possession of Norfolk, Va.; 30, Corinth, Miss., taken; May 31, June 1, Battle of Fair Oaks, or Seven Pines.

JUNE 3, Lee assumes command before Richmond; 6, Surrender of Memphis, Tenn.; 25, Battle of Oak Grove, Va., commencing the seven days' struggle; 26, Battle of Mechanicsville, Va.; 27, Battle of Gaines's Hill, Va.; 29, Battle of Savage's Station, Va.; 30, Battles of White Oak Swamp and Charles City Cross Roads, Va.

JULY 1, Battle of Malvern Hill, Va.; President calls for 300,000 more men.

AUGUST 9, President calls for 300,000 additional troops—Union victory at Cedar Mountain; Aug. 26-Sept. 1, Pope's battles between Manassas and Washington; Aug. 30, Union defeat at Richmond, Ky.

SEPTEMBER 6, Lee's army invades Maryland; 14, Union victory at South Mountain, Md.; 15, Capture of Harper's Ferry by "Stonewall Jackson"; 17, Union victory at Antietam Creek, Md.—Union defeat at Munfordsville, Ky.; 19, Union victory at Iuka, Miss.

OCTOBER 4, Confederates repulsed at Corinth, Miss.; 8, Union victory at Perryville, Ky.

DECEMBER 13, Union repulse at Fredericksburg, Va.; 29, Union repulse

at Vicksburg, Miss.; 31, Battle at Murfreesboro, Tenn. (Dec. 31–Jan. 2, 1863).

1863. JANUARY 1, Emancipation Proclamation; 11, Capture of Arkansas Post, Ark.

APRIL 7, Naval attack on Fort Sumter, S. C.; 17, Grierson's raid in Miss. (April 17–May 1).

MAY 1, Union victory at Port Gibson, Miss.; 2, 3, Union defeat at Chancellorsville, Va.; 3, Confederates capture Col. Streight; 12, Union victory at Raymond, Miss.; 14, Union victory near Jackson, Miss.; 16, Union victory at Champion's Hill. Miss.; 17, Union victory at Big Black River, Miss.

JUNE 15, Lee's second invasion of Maryland commences; 17, Iron-clad Atlanta captured.

JULY 1–3, Battle of Gettysburg, Pa.; 4, Capture of Vicksburg, Miss.; 8, Capture of Port Hudson, La.; 13–16, Great riot in N. Y. city; 21, Morgan defeated in Ohio; 26, Capture of Morgan.

SEPTEMBER 7, Capture of Fort Wagner and Battery Gregg, in Charleston harbor; 8, Union repulse at Sabine Pass, Texas; 10, Capture of Little Rock, Ark.; 19, 20, Battle of Chickamauga, Ga.

NOVEMBER 18, Knoxville, Tenn., invested by Longstreet; 24, Union victory at Lookout Mountain; 25, Union victory at Missionary Ridge.

DECEMBER 3, Longstreet raises the siege of Knoxville.

1864. FEBRUARY 1, President orders a draft for deficiency under the last call, and 200,000 additional men; 20, Union defeat at Olustee, Fla.

MARCH 3, Grant made Lt.-General; 13, Fort De Russy, La., taken; 14, President calls for 200,000 more men; 26, Confederates repulsed at Cane River, La.

APRIL 8, Union defeat at Mansfield, or Sabine Cross Roads, La.; 9, Battle of Pleasant Hill, La.; 12, Confederates capture Fort Pillow, Tenn.; 18, Confederates capture Plymouth, N. C.

MAY 3, Meade breaks camp; 5, Butler lands on the south side of the James; 5–7, Battle of the Wilderness, Va.; 7, Sherman moves from Chattanooga; 7–12, Battles near Spottsylvania Court-House, Va.; 15, Battle of Resaca, Ga.; Union defeat at New Market, Va.; 28, Battle near Dallas, Ga.

JUNE 14, 15, Grant crosses to the south side of the James; 15–17, Battle of Lost Mountain, Ga.; 19, Alabama sunk by the Kearsarge; 22, Union victory at Kenesaw Mn., Ga.; 27, Union repulse at Kenesaw Mn.

JULY 5, Early invades Maryland; Union defeat at Monocacy, Md.; 18, President calls for 500,000 volunteers; 20, 22, 28, Battles before Atlanta, Ga.; 30, Chambersburg burned—Mine exploded at Petersburg, and Union assault repulsed.

AUGUST 5, Union victory in Mobile Bay; 8, Fort Gaines, Ala., taken; 18, Weldon Railroad seized; 23, Fort Morgan taken; Aug. 31, Sept. 1, Union victory at Jonesboro, Ga.

SEPTEMBER 2, Capture of Atlanta, Ga.; 19, Union victory at Winchester, Va.; 22, Union victory at Fisher's Hill, Va.; 29, Attack at Chapin's Bluff, Va.

OCTOBER 19, Union victory at Cedar Creek (Middletown), Va.—Raid on St. Albans, Vt.; 27, Engagement at Hatcher's Run—Ram Albemarle sunk; 31, Union troops recapture Plymouth, N. C.

NOVEMBER 25, Attempt to fire N. Y. city; 30, Battle of Franklin, Tenn.

DECEMBER 13, Capture of Fort McAllister, Ga.; 15, 16, Union victory at Nashville, Tenn.; 20, President calls for 300,000 men; 21, Capture of Savannah, Ga.; 24, First bombardment of Fort Fisher, N. C.

1865. JANUARY 15, Capture of Fort Fisher, N. C.

FEBRUARY 17, Capture of Columbia, S. C.; 18, Capture of Charleston, S. C.; 22, Capture of Wilmington, N. C.

MARCH 16, Battle of Moore's Cross Roads, N. C.; 19, 20, Battle of Bentonsville, N. C.; 21, Goldsborough, N. C., occupied; 25, Attack on Fort Steadman, Va.

APRIL 1, Union victory at Big Five Forks, Va.; 2, Lee's lines at Petersburg carried; 3, Capture of Petersburg and Richmond; 6, Union victory at Deatonville, Va.; 9, Lee's surrender; 13, Capture of Mobile, Ala., and Raleigh, N. C.; 14, Assassination of Pres. Lincoln; 15, Andrew Johnson takes the oath of office as president; 26, Johnston's surrender.

MAY 4, Dick Taylor's surrender; 10, Capture of Jefferson Davis; 26, Kirby Smith's surrender—END OF THE WAR: 29, Proclamation of amnesty.

DECEMBER, Slavery abolished in the United States.

1866. Civil Rights Bill passed. Fenian invasion of Canada. Tennessee restored to her relations in the Union.

1867. Russian America purchased by the U. S.

1868. Impeachment, trial, and acquittal of President Johnson. Arkansas, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, North and South Carolina, restored to their relations in the Union.

1869. Grant inaugurated, eighteenth president. Pacific Railroad completed.

1870. Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas restored to the Union. Fifteenth Amendment proclaimed as part of the Constitution.

1871. Treaty of Washington. Great Chicago fire.

1872. "Alabama claims" settled by the Geneva tribunal; $15,500,000, in gold, awarded to the U. S. Northwest boundary question decided by the Emperor of Germany. Great Boston fire.

1873. "Credit Mobilier" revelations. Political troubles in Louisiana. Modoc War. Financial panic. Difficulty with Spain.

1874. Louisiana troubles continued.

1875. January 1, 1879, fixed by Congress as the date for resuming specie payments. Death of Vice-president Wilson.

1876. The Centennial Year. Great Exhibition at Philadelphia. Sioux War. President proclaims that Colorado is admitted into the Union.
1877. Hayes inaugurated, nineteenth president. Troubles in Louisiana and South Carolina settled. Great railroad strike.
1878. Standard silver dollars coined and made a legal tender.
1879. Specie payments resumed. Ute outbreak in Colorado.
1880. New treaty with China.
1881. Garfield inaugurated, twentieth president. Garfield assassinated. Arthur inaugurated, twenty-first president.
1882. Passage of Anti-Polygamy Bill, and bill limiting Chinese immigration.
1883. The Civil Service Reform Bill becomes a law.
1884. Passage of the Presidential Succession Bill.

QUESTIONS.

Lesson I, p. 5.—1. What is the shape of the Earth? What does it contain? What are the two continents called? How are they separated? Point to them on the Map. 2. Where does the United States lie? What countries form the Eastern Continent? How can a person go from one continent to the other? 3. In old times, what did people think of a voyage across the ocean? 4. What did people think about the shape of the Earth, four hundred years ago? What did they think would happen to those who kept sailing west? What was the farthest land known toward the west? 5. What are found in this country now, that were not here four hundred years ago? 6. Describe this country, as it then looked. 7. What has so changed the appearance of our country? What have European settlers done? 8. To whom is the world indebted for the discovery of America?

Lesson II, p. 7.—1. Where was Columbus born? What is said of his parents? What did he do at an early age? What accident befell him? 2. After making many voyages, of what did Columbus become convinced? What did he suppose with respect to Asia? 3. What confirmed Columbus in his belief that the Earth was round? What was he anxious to do? 4. Why did not Columbus set out at once on his voyage? To whom did he first apply for ships? Where did he then go? What did the King of Portugal do? 5. Where did Columbus next go? By whom was Spain then ruled? What was the condition of Columbus at this time? In what did he find the King and Queen engaged? What was the consequence? 6. At last, with whom did he obtain an interview? What was the result? 7. What was the opinion of the wise men of Spain? Mention some of their arguments. 8. What conclusion did the King come to? What chance yet remained? What answer did Queen Isabella first make? 9. What happened just as Columbus was about leaving Spain? How many vessels did the Queen promise him?

Lesson III, p. 10.—1. How did a ship of Columbus's time differ from one of the present day? 2. With how many ships did Columbus set out? What was thought of the voyage? How many men were obtained? From what port, and when, did Columbus sail? How old was he? 3. Where did Columbus stop for repairs? When his men had been some days out, how did they begin to feel? What did they even talk of doing? 4. What promise did Columbus have to make? What signs of land soon appeared? When

was land discovered? How did the sailors now feel? 5. Describe the land as it appeared at daylight. What were seen on the shore? What did the natives take the ships to be? 6. Give an account of the landing of Columbus? 7. What was the land thus discovered? What name did Columbus give it? What did he call the natives, and why? What are the islands of this region still called? 8. What islands were next discovered by Columbus? What occurred at Haiti? What did Columbus take with him on his return? 9. What took place on the return voyage? What precautions did Columbus take? What was the result of the storm? How were Columbus and his companions received? 10. What was the date of the discovery of America?

Lesson IV, p. 13.—1. What was the effect of the news of Columbus's discovery? 2. How many more voyages did Columbus make? In which did he reach the mainland? When? At what point? 3. What difficulties did Columbus now meet with? What did the King and Queen of Spain do to him? What effect did their treatment have on him? 4. What happened to Columbus on his fourth voyage? How did the Indians now feel toward the Spaniards? Why was this? 5. How did Columbus save himself and his men? 6. What did Columbus find on his return to Spain? What became of him? 7. After whom was America so called? How did Amerigo obtain this honor? 8. Who first reached North America? When was this? What part of the coast did John Cabot reach? 9. What birds did he introduce into Europe? Give an account of the voyages of his son Sebastian.

Lesson V, p. 16.—1. By whom was the Pacific Ocean discovered? With how many men did Balboa start? What difficulties were encountered? 2. When near the top, what did Balboa do? What did he see? What was his first act? What did he afterward do? 3. What does the word *pacific* mean? Why was the ocean so called? Who gave it this name? How did Magellan enter the Pacific? 4. What became of Magellan? What was done by one of his ships? 5. What conquest next followed? When? Give an account of the Mexicans and their Emperor. What did they worship? Describe the figures represented in the engraving. 6. What did the Spaniards resolve to do? What preparations did they make for conquering Mexico? 7. What did the Mexican Emperor do, when he heard the Spaniards had landed? What was done by Cortez? 8. What took place before the Spaniards reached the capital? What was the result of these battles? What frightened the natives? 9. After much hard fighting, what did Cortez succeed in doing? How did he treat his captives? How long did Mexico remain a Spanish province?

Lesson VI, p. 19.—1. In 1524, who explored the coast of America? What name did he give the region he visited? Give an account of Cartier's discoveries. How did he treat the Indians? 2. Where did some Frenchmen attempt to settle? What made them return? Where were other settlements attempted by the French? 3. Meanwhile, what were the Spaniards doing? Who led a famous expedition? Where did De Soto land? How many men had he? What did he take with him? 4. Where did De Soto wander for many

months? How did he treat the Indians? 5. What was the consequence of the Spaniards' cruelty? What was the result of the battle? How did a Mississippi tribe revenge themselves? 6. What great discovery was made by De Soto? Where did De Soto next go, and why? How did the Indian tribes try to get rid of him? 7. In what condition did De Soto now find his men? What befell De Soto himself? What was done with his corpse? 8. What did De Soto's men do after his death? How many reached their countrymen? How long had they been gone?

Lesson VII, p. 22.—1. Describe the Indian chief represented in the engraving. 2. What is said of the different tribes? Why have the Indians been called Red Men? What kind of hair had they? How were they clothed in the north? How in the south? 3. In what did the Indian spend most of his time? How did he obtain his food? What did he raise? What did the Indian squaw have to do? 4. How did the Indian sleep, when out hunting? At home, what did he occupy? How was the wigwam made? Describe the scene represented in the engraving. 5. How did the Indians treat strangers? What were they sure to remember? 6. In what were the Indians constantly engaged? When on a war-trail, on what did they depend for food? 7. What was their object in war? How did they move? How did they conceal their trail? 8. What was done to an enemy killed in battle? How were prisoners treated? 9. What common mode of dealing with prisoners is mentioned? What is meant by "running the gantlet"? 10. How would they sometimes torture a captive? How would the captive bear these tortures? 11. What were buried with an Indian warrior? Why was this done? Describe the different modes of burying. What would a mother sometimes do with the corpse of her child? 12. What did the Indians believe respecting the state after death? To whom did they pray? 13. What can you say of the Indian languages? How were facts recorded? Describe the representation of picture-writing.

Lesson VIII, p. 26.—1. For how many years was no permanent settlement made in what is now the United States? Who planted the first permanent colony? When, and where? 2. What settlement was made forty years afterward? Where was a colony planted by Champlain? What received its name from Champlain? What part of the continent did the French hold? The Spaniards? 3. Who claimed the tract between the French and the Spanish possessions? Who undertook to colonize it? Give an account of the first expedition sent out by Raleigh. What name was given to the region, and why? 4. Where did the second party sent out by Raleigh settle? What acts of imprudence were committed by their governors? What was the consequence? 5. What did Raleigh next do? What city was laid out? What became of this colony? 6. What became of Raleigh? How is he regarded? What city has been named in his honor? 7. What useful article did Raleigh introduce into Europe? What else? What anecdote is related of his servant? 8. When and by whom was the first permanent English settlement made? Where did this party mean to land? Where did they land? What city did

they lay out? To whom did this region belong? How did some of the Indians feel toward the English? What did Powhatan say? 9. What happened soon after Newport's return to England? What saved the colony? 10. What kind of a man was Captain Smith? What measures did he take?

Lesson IX, p. 31.—1. Relate some of Captain Smith's early adventures? 2. What took place on one of his voyages? What do we next find him doing? 3. How was Smith treated during his captivity? Give an account of his escape. 4. What befell Smith, while out on one of his exploring expeditions? How did he save himself from immediate death? 5. How did Captain Smith increase the wonder of the savages? What did they do with him? 6. What took place when they reached Powhatan's village? How was Smith saved? 7. After sparing his life, how did the Indians treat Captain Smith? What services did Pocahontas render the English? 8. In what condition did Smith find affairs at Jamestown? Who soon after arrived? What mistake did some of the new comers fall into?

Lesson X, p. 33.—1. What did Captain Smith do in 1608? What took place shortly after his return? 2. Who was soon afterward appointed governor? How many vessels were sent out? What happened to one of these? Who managed affairs till the leaders of the party arrived? What difficulties did he labor under? 3. What other danger was there? How did Smith manage to get some corn from Powhatan? 4. What obliged Captain Smith to return to England? What was the consequence of his return? What was this period called? 5. What saved the colony? What was the state of affairs under Delaware? What passed for money? 6. In 1619, what was done by the London Company, to make the colonists attached to their new country? What was the price of a wife? 7. What became of Pocahontas? 8. Where did Rolfe take his wife? How was she received? What effect had the climate of England on her? 9. What anecdote is related of one of Powhatan's warriors?

Lesson XI, p. 37.—1. Where and by whom was the next settlement made? Why did the Dutch want to find "a northwest passage"? Whom did they send out? 2. What was called after the navigator Hudson? Give an account of Hudson's voyage. 3. What is the name of the island on which the city of New York stands? What does this word mean? What did the Indians think when they saw Hudson's ship approaching? 4, 5, 6. Tell the story about Hudson's meeting with the Indians. 7. What did Hudson give the Indians? What use did they make of these gifts? 8. How high did Hudson's ship ascend the river? How far did one of his boats go? What did Hudson then do? What discovery did he afterward make? What was the fate of Hudson? 9. How did the Dutch follow up Hudson's discovery? In what did they trade? How did they protect the traders? What was the origin of the great city of New York? What was it first called? What was the whole region called? 10. What kind of a people were the Dutch? How much did they give for Manhattan Island? Where did they establish posts? Where did their traders spread out? When did families come over to New Netherland?

Lesson XII, p. 39.—1. Who gave New England its name? When and by whom was New England first permanently settled? To what religious sect did the Pilgrim Fathers belong? 2. Why did the Puritans come to America? How many came at first? On what vessel? Where did they mean to settle? What part of the coast did they reach? 3. What was found by the exploring parties sent out? What was the consequence of their exposure? What did the Puritans finally do? 4. Relate the adventures of this exploring party. What did they at last find? 5. When did the Pilgrims land? What did they call the place they founded? Where is Plymouth situated? What do you see in the engraving? 6. What befell the Pilgrims after their landing? 7, 8, 9. Of what were the houses of the Puritans built? With what did they cover them? Tell the story about Brown and Goodman.

Lesson XIII, p. 42.—1. What kind of a winter did the Pilgrims pass? What was the state of things in April? 2. What signs did the country around Plymouth show? What was seen several times in the winter? Give an account of Samoset's visit. 3. What did Samoset tell the white men? 4. What story is related about this pestilence? 5. How did the Pilgrims treat Samoset? Who soon after visited them? What did they present to Massasoit? What did they give his brother? What was the consequence? 6. What service did two of the Pilgrims afterward render to Massasoit? 7. What warlike message did the Pilgrims receive? How did they answer it? What was the result? What precaution did the Pilgrims take? 8. From what did the Pilgrims suffer at first? When their friends joined them, what did they have to offer them? 9. In three or four years, what was the state of the colony? How many inhabitants did it contain in 1630?

Lesson XIV, p. 45.—1. When and by whom was Massachusetts Bay colony established? What places were founded? What has Boston since become? 2. Who was the founder of Rhode Island? Where was Roger Williams settled? Why did the people of Massachusetts Bay want to send him back to England? 3. How did Roger Williams escape being sent back to England? What did he resolve to do? Give an account of his wanderings. Where and how did he obtain some land? What did he call his settlement? 4. What other settlement was soon after made? What was found on the Isle of Rhodes? What city was founded near this tower? 5. When was New Hampshire first settled? With what colony were these settlements first united? After forty years, what was done with them? 6. What does the word *Connecticut* mean? By whom was the Connecticut River discovered? Where did the Dutch built a fort? Who heard of this pleasant river? What were the Dutch surprised to see one day? What did they do? 7. To whom did the vessel belong? Where was it from? What did Holmes do? Where did he settle? 8. Where and by whom was Saybrook founded?

Lesson XV, p. 48.—1. When and by whom was Connecticut first permanently settled? Two years afterward, who went there? What befell this party from Massachusetts Bay? 2. What took place the next summer? On what did the emigrants live? How long did it take them to make the journey?

What places did they found? 3. By whom was the greater part of Connecticut inhabited? Where did the Pequods live? What excited their jealousy? What was the consequence? 4. How was the murder of Oldham discovered? 5. How did the people of New England punish the murderers? What was the consequence? 6. Whom did the Pequods try to rouse against the English settlers? How did the English prevent them from succeeding? 7. What measures were next taken by the settlers? Give an account of the battle with the Pequods. What took place the next morning? What became of the few that survived? 8. When was New Haven founded? By whom? What did the settlers of New Haven adopt as their rule of public action? 9. In 1643, how many villages did the New England colonies contain? What alliance was formed in this year? How long did this league last?

Lesson XVI, p. 51.—1. What was the next colony founded? To whom was the region now called Maryland granted? What did Calvert desire? What did his charter provide? Why was this tract called Maryland? 2. By whom was a colony planted in Maryland? When? Where was the settlement of St. Mary's? (See map, p. 50.) What did they give the Indians? What did the Indian women teach them? 3. What is said of the settlers of Maryland? By whom was their only trouble caused? What is the largest city in Maryland? After whom was it named? 4. When was Delaware founded? By whom? Who are the Swedes? The Finns? Where did they land? How did they obtain a tract? What did they call it? What did they erect? 5. Who disputed the right of the Swedes to this region? On what ground? What was the result? To what was the name of New Sweden changed? 6. From what did the Dutch of New Netherland suffer for a time? Under whom was New Sweden conquered? 7. While Stuyvesant was governor, what grant was made by the King of England? What was the consequence? When the English fleet arrived, what did Stuyvesant do? 8. How did the people of New Amsterdam feel on the subject? Why was this? What followed? 9. When did the English make this conquest? What now belonged to them? To what did they change the names of New Amsterdam and New Netherland? 10. What was the origin of New Jersey? What caused it to become rapidly peopled?

Lesson XVII, p. 55.—1. What war broke out in 1675? Who was Philip? Of what tribe was he chief? Where did the Wampanoags live? Where did the Narragansetts live? 2. What was the cause of King Philip's war? 3. How was the war commenced by the savages? 4. Give an account of Captain Church's encounter with the Indians. 5. In a few months, how many men did King Philip raise? Where did he get them? What did he do when cold weather set in? What measures were now taken by the English? What was the only way of reaching Philip's fort? 6. Describe the swamp fight. How did it result? Who got away in safety? What was the lot of those who escaped? 7. What became of Canonchet? How did he answer a young soldier who asked him some questions? 8. Meanwhile, what was Philip engaged in doing? From what did his men suffer? What became of many of them?

What broke Philip's heart? What now alone was left him? 9. Where did Philip at last take refuge? By whom was he surrounded? Give an account of Philip's death. 10. What did King Philip's war cost New England? What were its consequences to the Indians? After this, what was the state of things in New England?

Lesson XVIII, p. 58.—1. By whom was Powhatan succeeded in Virginia? What made Powhatan's brother an enemy to the English? On what did the Indians resolve? Give an account of their plot. 2. How was Jamestown saved? What took place in the other settlements in Virginia? What followed? 3. What took place in 1644? What became of the crafty old chief? 4. Who was governor of Virginia at this time? How did the people feel toward Berkeley? Why was he unwilling to provoke a war with the natives? 5. What took place about thirty years after the fall of Powhatan's brother? Who rose up in defence of the colony? What led him to do so? 6. How did Berkeley regard this proceeding of Bacon's? What did he do? How was a great part of the year 1676 spent? How did the struggle result? What does the engraving represent? 7. What became of Bacon? What was done to those who had taken part in Bacon's rebellion? Where did Berkeley finally go? How was he treated? 8. What kind of governors did the Virginians have for some years? What struggle was carried on? 9. Was Jamestown ever rebuilt? How was the colony divided? Describe the state of things in Virginia two hundred years ago. 10. Describe the engraving.

Lesson XIX, p. 62.—1. When and by whom was North Carolina first settled? Ten years afterward, what grant was made? What kind of a plan was drawn up for the government of Carolina? How did the settlers like this? 2. When and by whom was South Carolina first settled? When was Charleston founded? How is Charleston situated? (See map, p. 73.) From what countries were emigrants attracted? How did the plan drawn up for the government of Carolina succeed here? 3. What difficulties arose with the governors? How did they result? 4. What are among the chief products of South Carolina? Where did rice come from? What is said of the raising of cotton? 5. Give the early history of the first settlements in what is now Pennsylvania. To whom was this region finally transferred? Whence did it receive its name? 6. What was William Penn? Describe the Quakers. 7. How were the Quakers treated in England? How had William Penn been treated? How was it that he obtained a grant in the new world? 8. When did Penn and his Quakers reach America? What did he do the next year? How is Philadelphia situated? (See map, p. 108.) Give an account of Penn's treaty with the Indians. 9. How long was Pennsylvania free from troubles with the natives? What is said of the growth of Philadelphia? What became of Penn?

Lesson XX, p. 64.—1. Describe the Puritans and their houses. 2. Why had the Puritans fled from England? How did they act when they had the power in the new world? Whom did they drive out? How did they treat Quakers? 3. What spirit did the Puritans display toward the Indians?

What was done by Eliot? What success did Eliot meet with? 4. What other people sent missionaries among the Indians? What river was explored by the French? What city was founded by them in 1608? Where were various French settlements made? Who came out with the traders? 5. Where were several little forts built by the French? What reward did the missionaries often meet with? How did they show their devotion? 6. Tell the story of Father Jogues. 7. By whom was the upper part of the Mississippi discovered? Give an account of their wanderings. What afterward happened to Marquette? 8. Who was the greatest of these French explorers? Give an account of La Salle's wanderings? What discovery was made by part of his company? What did La Salle do in 1682? 9. What did La Salle next do? What accident befell him? Where did he finally try to make his way? 10. What was the fate of La Salle? What became of his party? What claim did the French King base on La Salle's discoveries?

Lesson XXI, p. 68.—1. What cause was there for jealousy between the French and English? In 1689, what took place? What was this war called, and why? 2. What was the first step taken by the French? What stratagem was practised by the Indians in Dover, New Hampshire? 3. How did the Indians treat Major Waldron? What did they do to the neighboring houses? 4. Give an account of the attack on Schenectady. 5. What expeditions were sent out by the English? What was their success? Which side had the better throughout King William's War? 6. Give an account of the capture of Mrs. Dustin. 7. What was done with Mrs. Dustin? How did she escape? What commemorates her bravery?

Lesson XXII, p. 70.—1. What war broke out in 1702? Where did hostilities begin in the new world? What was done by the governor of South Carolina? What expedition did he afterward undertake? 2. What attack was made in return by the French and Spaniards? What success did they meet with? From what did the planters of Carolina suffer? 3. In 1704, what place was attacked? How did the French and Indians get inside of the palisades? 4. How did the attack on Deerfield terminate? Who were taken prisoners? What became of Mrs. Williams? What became of Mr. Williams and most of his family? 5. Tell the story of Mr. Williams's little daughter. 6. What settlement was made by the French in the southwest? When was New Orleans laid out? How is New Orleans situated? (See map.) What rank does this city now hold? Where is Natchez? 7. What led to the destruction of the French fort just mentioned? How did the people of New Orleans avenge this massacre? 8. Which of the colonies was settled last? When and by whom was Georgia settled? What city was first founded? How is Savannah situated? (See map.) 9. How did Oglethorpe treat the Indians? Give an account of their visit to him. 10. State, in order, by whom and when each of the Thirteen Colonies was founded.

Lesson XXIII, p. 74.—1. What difficulty again arose between the French and the English? What was the ground of the French claim? What steps were taken by the French? 2. What passed between the Indians living

near the Ohio and the French? With whom did the Indians then make a treaty? What was done by the governor of Virginia? 3. Who was selected for this mission? How old was Washington then? Where was he born? By whom was he brought up? 4. Relate the story about George's skill in horsemanship. 5. What position did George take in school? How was he employed after leaving school? What led the governor of Virginia to choose him for his messenger? 6. Where did the French fort lie? What is said of the route thither? What effect did Washington's message produce? 7. By whom had Washington been accompanied? What did the French try to do with these Indians? At last, what was Washington obliged to do? What is said of the journey home? 8. Give an account of Washington's narrow escape amid the drifting ice. 9. On making his report, for what was Washington commended? What war followed?

Lesson XXIV, p. 76.—1. Where did Washington advise the erection of a fort? What became of this fort? What did the French call it? 2. What victory was soon after achieved by Washington? What then befell him? 3. Who came over in 1755? What post did Braddock proceed to attack? Who joined his army? What advice did Washington give Braddock? What reply did Braddock make? 4. Give an account of the surprise of Braddock's army. How did the Virginia Rangers behave? What is said of the rest of the army? 5. What befell Braddock? Who then took the command? What dangers did Washington escape? 6. What became of Braddock's fine army? What had the French commander at first intended? What made him change his mind? 7. What success did the English colonists have in the north? What large tract did they conquer? 8. In 1756, what French general came over? What did Montcalm do in 1757? On whom did the commander of Fort William Henry rely for aid? 9. Why did not Webb go to relieve the fort? How long did it hold out? On what terms was it surrendered? 10. Give an account of the massacre that followed the surrender. Up to this time, which party had generally been successful? How did the French territory in America now compare with the English?

Lesson XXV, p. 79.—1. By what had the English losses been caused? What did they therefore do? What French post was captured? How long did the commander hold out? 2. What other post was attacked. With what result? Give an account of the English attack on Fort Du Quesne. 3. What was erected on the site of Fort Du Quesne? To what was the name changed? How was Washington received, on his return to Virginia? What passed in the House of Burgesses? 4. What was the strongest place now in possession of the French? How was Quebec situated? By whom was it defended? Who was sent against it? When? 5. How did Wolfe spend several months? What desperate plan did he at last form? 6. Give an account of the ascent. What did Montcalm do, on hearing the news? What was the result of the battle? What was Wolfe's fate? 7. What happened to Montcalm? Three days after the battle, what took place? What fell into the hands of the English the next year? 8. How long did the French and Indian

War last? How have the English honored the memory of Wolfe and Montcalm? What did England lose, and what did she gain, in this struggle?

Lesson XXVI, p. 83.—1. What now prevented the colonies from flourishing? What was the character of many of the governors? 2. How did the colonists feel towards their oppressive governors? What difficulty arose with Governor Andros? 3. How was the charter saved? What afterwards happened to Andros? 4, 5. What difficulty arose with Governor Fletcher? Tell what passed between him and Captain Wadsworth. 6. What afforded a new pretext for wringing money out of America? What did the King and Parliament claim? What ground was taken by the colonies? 7. What did Parliament do in 1760? What was the effect of this in the colonies? What increased the excitement? What was required by the Stamp Act? How did the colonists feel respecting this tax?

Lesson XXVII, p. 85.—1. What took place in the House of Burgesses of Virginia, when the passage of the Stamp Act was announced? What was the effect of Patrick Henry's eloquence? 2. What acts followed on the part of the colonists? What was Parliament obliged to do? On what did it lay a duty? 3. What increased the dissatisfaction of the colonists? How did the soldiers behave on their arrival? What is meant by "the Boston Massacre"? 4. What concessions did Parliament finally make? Was this sufficient? What resolution did the colonists form? Give an account of the riot at Boston. 5. What passed between the tea rioters and the British Admiral? 6. Who was now governor of Massachusetts? What course did he pursue? How were the Boston boys troubled? Give an account of their interview with General Gage. 7. What did General Gage try to do? With what success? What meeting was held in 1774? What measures were adopted? What famous words of Patrick Henry's were reëchoed throughout the colonies?

Lesson XXVIII, p. 88.—1. When did the war break out? What was it called? What was done by the British Parliament in 1775? What had General Gage already done? How did the patriots get their cannon and ammunition out of Boston? 2. Where did the patriots collect most of their stores? What movement was made by General Gage? What did the British hear, as they advanced toward Concord? 3. What place did the British reach soon after daylight? What took place at Lexington? 4. Where did the British then go? Give an account of the skirmish at Concord Bridge. What did the British destroy? What had been done with most of the stores? 5. How did Mr. Wheeler save a large quantity of flour? 6. Describe the retreat of the British to Boston. What alone enabled them to reach the city? 7. What effect did the news of the battle of Lexington produce? Describe the scene represented in the engraving. 8. What story is told of a mother and her two sons? 9. Relate the incident at Barnstable.

Lesson XXIX, p. 92.—1. Where, besides in New England, was the spirit of resistance shown? What took place in Charlotte, North Carolina? 2. Where was Ticonderoga situated? Who resolved to capture it? Why were Ethan Allen's party called Green Mountain Boys? Where did they

assemble? 3. How did they obtain information about the fort? Give an account of the crossing. What took place as they approached the fort? 4. What did the soldiers find, when they leaped from their beds? What passed between Allen and the commander? What was the result? 5. What did Ethan Allen soon after plan? What success did he meet with? What did the British do with him? How was he treated? 6. Tell how he once repaid the kindness of a British captain. 7. Relate an anecdote showing Allen's honesty. 8. What took place the same day on which Ticonderoga was captured? What preparations were made by Congress? Who was elected commander-in-chief? To what place did Washington hasten? What took place before Washington reached Cambridge?

Lesson XXX, p. 94.—1. In June, 1775, how many British troops lay in Boston? How many Americans had gathered around the city? What movement was contemplated by the British? In view of this, what was done by the American general? 2. What was accomplished by the Americans during the night? What did the British see in the morning? What measures were taken by the British? 3. Give an account of the battle of Bunker Hill. Near what place did the battle take place? (See map.) 4. Who was killed, as the Americans were leaving the works? What had passed between Warren and Colonel Prescott? How did the British general feel, when he heard of Warren's fall? 5. Which party had the advantage in the battle of Bunker Hill? What monument has since been raised? 6. Who did good service at Bunker Hill? How was Putnam employed when he heard of the battle of Lexington? What did he do? In what war had he served? How old was he at this time? 7, 8. Tell the story of Putnam and the wolf. 9. What did Putnam once do, at the risk of his life? Give an account of his rescue from the Indians by a French officer. 10. What anecdote is related of Putnam and General Gage?

Lesson XXXI, p. 98.—1. What did Congress proceed to carry on? What was their object in invading Canada? To whom did they give the command of the expedition? What places surrendered? What place remained? What difficulty did Montgomery now meet with? 2. Who where at this time making their way to join Montgomery? Give an account of the sufferings of Arnold's party. 3. When this party arrived, what did Montgomery do? What success did he meet with in the siege? At last, what desperate resolve was formed? 4. Give an account of the attack on Quebec. What was one party of the Americans obliged to do? What was done by the rest? How long did they remain before Quebec? 5. Whom did the King and Parliament hire to fight for them in America? In the mean time, what was Congress doing? What did they urge Washington to do? Why was he unwilling to attack the British? When did he take the field? 6. What was Washington's first movement? What did the British general determine to do? What prevented him from making the attempt? 7. What were the British then obliged to do? How had those patriots who had stayed in Boston suffered? Where did the British go? Who had preceded them?

Lesson XXXII, p. 100.—1. What did the people of South Carolina hear in June, 1776? What did they do, on learning this? What soon appeared? What was the effect of the British fire on the fort? 2. What was the effect of the fire from the fort? What attempt was made by the troops? How long did the British keep up the attack? What was the result? 3. What gallant deed was performed by Sergeant Jasper in this battle? 4, 5. Tell the story about Jasper's rescuing some American prisoners near Savannah. 6. Why is the 4th of July kept as a holiday? What had Congress hoped? On the 4th of July, 1776, what did Congress do? After this, what were the thirteen colonies styled. 7. What took place in Philadelphia, while Congress was discussing the Declaration? How was the news that the Declaration had passed received in New York? How in Boston? What is represented in the engraving?

Lesson XXXIII, p. 103.—1. Where did the war centre in 1776? Who was now the British commander? What troops had Howe? In what direction did he advance on New York? What preparations had the Americans made on Long Island? 2. Give an account of the battle of Long Island. After the battle, why did not Howe attack the American fortifications? 3. Who crossed to Long Island during the battle? Tell how Washington saved the army. 4. How did the British come near learning that the Americans were embarking? What was the effect of the battle of Long Island? 5. What had Howe done on first approaching New York? How were his advances met? What passed between Howe and a committee of Congress, after the battle? 6. Who were called Tories, and who Whigs? What plot was formed by the Tories? How did Washington hear of it? 7. What measures were taken by Washington to discover the guilty party? 8. What passed at dinner? 9. Tell the story about the sloop of war that put into Martha's Vineyard.

Lesson XXXIV, p. 106.—1. What was the state of the American army in New York, after the battle of Long Island? What was Washington obliged to do? What then became of New York? What course did Howe pursue? 2. Describe Washington's movements. Where did a battle take place? With what result? What did Washington then do? What took place at Fort Washington? 3. What followed the fall of Fort Washington? Describe the retreat of the American army across New Jersey. How did Washington save his men? What did Cornwallis do, on arriving at the Delaware? 4. What was the next movement of Washington? What time was chosen for the attempt, and why? Give an account of the surprise of the Hessians at Trenton. 5. What was done by Washington after the surprise at Trenton? How many men had he lost? 6. A few days afterward, what movement did Washington make? Who soon appeared, to give him battle? Tell how Washington disappointed Cornwallis. 7. What took place at Princeton? Where did Washington fix his winter-quarters? 8. From what did the Americans suffer at Morristown? How did the people of the place treat them? What did Washington accomplish during the winter? 9. Re-

late the stratagem by which Cornwallis was misled as to the strength of the Americans.

Lesson XXXV, p. 109.—1. In 1777, who led another British army into the field? What state did Burgoyne invade? What did he do on the bank of Lake Champlain? What posts were taken? What did the Americans do as Burgoyne advanced? 2. Who commanded the northern American army? Give an account of the attempt to murder General Schuyler. 3. What detachment had been sent out by General Burgoyne? Where did this detachment meet with a brave resistance? Give an account of General Herkimer's attempt to relieve Fort Stanwix. 4. Who then undertook to relieve the fort? Relate Arnold's stratagem. 5. Where did Burgoyne send another detachment? By whom were they met? How did Stark address his men? What was the result of the battle of Bennington? 6. Relate the story about the conscientious minister. 7. What effect did the failure of these expeditions have? What is related of Mrs. Schuyler? How was the American army increased? 8. What change was now made in the command of the northern army? What did Gates determine to do? What was the consequence? Give an account of the first battle of Stillwater. 9. What was now Burgoyne's condition? Give an account of the second battle of Stillwater. 10. What was Burgoyne's next movement? What was he finally obliged to do? What were surrendered at Saratoga?

Lesson XXXVI, p. 113.—1. While Burgoyne was conducting his campaign, what was Washington trying to do? What movements had been made by Howe? How many men had each general? Where did they meet? What was the result of the battle of Brandywine? 2. Who is mentioned as fighting bravely at Brandywine? What is said of this young French noble? 3. Where was a large division of the British stationed? In what direction is Germantown from Philadelphia? (See map.) What attempt did Washington make? Give an account of the battle of Germantown. Where did Washington lead his men into winter-quarters? 4. What amusing incident took place during the battle of Germantown? 5. What was the condition of the American army at Valley Forge? What made it hard for them to get provisions? 6. How did Mary Knight help the American soldiers? How did she preserve her brother? 7. Amid the general gloom, what joyful news was received? By whose efforts had this been brought about? What is said of the youth of Benjamin Franklin? 8. On reaching Philadelphia, what did Franklin find? What passed between him and his landlady? How was Franklin regarded?

Lesson XXXVII, p. 116.—1. In 1778, what change was made in the command of the British army? What orders had Clinton? How did his army compare with Washington's? Where did they meet? 2. Give an account of the battle of Monmouth. How did the Americans and Washington pass the night? What did they find in the morning? 3. Describe the weather on the day of the battle. Tell the story of Molly Pitcher. 4. What is said of the Indians on the frontier? What did they do in 1778? Where was Wyoming? What preparations were made by its inhabitants? What was the fate

of those who went to meet the enemy? How were the prisoners treated? 5. What befell the people in the fort, and the whole valley? 6. Where did the British commence operations toward the close of 1778? What city did they take? By whom were they attacked in Savannah? What was the result of the attack? Who lost his life in this battle? 7. What serious reverse did the patriots of the south suffer, the next year? What fell into the hands of the enemy at Charleston? 8. Relate the stratagem practised by Colonel White. 9. How did White secure his prisoners?

Lesson XXXVIII, p. 119.—1. How did the power of the United States compare with that of England on the ocean? What are privateers? How did they annoy the English? Who was among the most famous officers employed by Congress? 2. Give an account of the early life of Paul Jones. What did he do when the Revolution broke out? What honor did he enjoy? Describe this flag. What was Jones soon doing? 3. Where did Jones afterward cruise? How was he looked upon? What happened at one point of the coast? 4. What was Jones's most famous battle? What was the result of the engagement? What honor did the King confer on the commander of the Serapis? What did Jones say? 5, 6. Give an account of Putnam's escape from the dragoons. 7. What state was overrun by the British in 1780? What were the people required to do? What outrages were committed? What was their effect? 8. Name two famous partisan leaders. Where had Marion served? How had he escaped capture at Charleston? 9. What is said of Marion and his men? Relate the story of Marion and the British officer. 10. How did the women of Carolina help their defenders? Tell the story of Miss Moore. What was done by one company of young women?

Lesson XXXIX, p. 123.—1. Give an account of Marion's escape from some British dragoons. 2. Tell the story about Horry and Baxter. 3. What was at last done by Congress? Where did Gates march? What did the patriots do as he approached? 4. How was the powder used at Hanging Rock saved? 5. What was the date of the battle of Camden? What strange coincidence is mentioned? Give an account of the battle. What followed? Who superseded General Gates? 6. What prevented Congress from sending another army into the field? Under what difficulties did Congress labor? 7. What was the condition of Washington's army in the north? What treacherous blow was now aimed at the patriot cause? What post did Arnold command? What offer did he make to the British? 8. Who was sent to confer with Arnold? What took place while Andre was returning? What was the fate of Andre? 9. What did Arnold do on hearing of Andre's capture? How did Arnold afterward distinguish himself? How was he looked upon? 10. What plan was formed for capturing Arnold? How was it defeated? Who subsequently tried to take him?

Lesson XL, p. 126.—1. After his victory at Camden, what did Cornwallis proceed to do? What was done by some whig mountaineers? What was the result of the battle of King's Mountain? 2. Whom did General Greene station at Cowpens? By whom was Morgan attacked? Give an ac-

count of the battle. 3. Describe the encounter between Colonel Washington and Tarleton. What rebuke did Tarleton soon after receive? 4. Give an account of Colonel Washington's stratagem. 5. What was done by Cornwallis, on hearing of Tarleton's defeat at Cowpens? How were the Americans saved at the Catawba? What befell General Greene about this time? 6. How were the Americans saved at the Yadkin? After crossing the Yadkin, what did Cornwallis try to do? Did he succeed? What is said of the hardships of the Americans? 7. Where was the next battle fought? What was its result? What did Cornwallis think it best to do? Where did he afterward go? How much property was destroyed by the British in Virginia? Where did Cornwallis then collect his forces? 8. What were Marion and Lee now doing? What took place at Mrs. Motte's? 9. Relate an incident connected with the attack on Georgetown.

Lesson XLI, p. 130.—1. Where did Greene go after the battle of Guilford Court-House? Where did he meet with a reverse? What did he soon succeed in doing? Where did he give battle to the main body of the enemy? 2. Relate an anecdote about a British officer at Eutaw. 3. Give an account of the battle of Eutaw. What was done by the British commander the next day? 4. Where did a French fleet appear in the summer of 1781? What was at once done by Washington? Whose division was already in Virginia? When was Yorktown invested? 5. What did Cornwallis first try? What did he then attempt? What success did he meet with? 6. What was now Cornwallis's only hope? When did he find it necessary to surrender? How many laid down their arms? What is related of Washington? What did Clinton do that same day? 7. How was the news of the surrender received? What took place at Philadelphia? 8. What did the King and Parliament now find was useless? Where did commissioners meet? What was the result? What orders did the British army receive? 9. What new danger arose while the American army was lying unemployed? What did they offer to make Washington? How did he meet it? 10. When was the army disbanded? What was the condition of many of the soldiers? Give an account of Washington's parting with his officers. After this, what did he do?

Lesson XLII, p. 133.—1. Give an account of Washington's visit to his mother. What passed between her and La Fayette? 2. By what difficulties did Congress find itself surrounded? Of what did England complain? 3. What was the condition of the people? What took place in Massachusetts? What was the issue of Shays' rebellion? 4. What now became evident? How was it proposed to form a constitution? When and where did the convention meet? Who was elected its president? 5. What difficulties arose in the convention? What proposition was made by Benjamin Franklin? What was the effect? 6. What was done with the constitution, when thus drawn up? By whom was it defended? How was it received by the states? 7. According to the constitution, by whom are all laws for the country at large passed? How often does Congress meet? By whom are the senators elected? The representatives? By whom are the laws interpreted? By whom are the

laws executed? 8. What *veto* power has the President? What other powers does he possess? Who takes the President's place if he is disabled? In what matters is each state supreme? In what, the general government? 9. Who was elected the first President? What is said of Washington's journey to New York? When did he take the oath of office?

Lesson XLIII, p. 137.—1. What was the first thing to be done in Washington's administration? To whom was the task intrusted? What did Hamilton succeed in doing? What did Congress do by his advice? What was the effect of these measures? 2. What was the next difficulty that arose? Where had adventurous hunters made their way? Who first settled in Kentucky? What is said of Boone's wife and daughter? 3. What took place at Bryan Station in 1782? 4. How did Congress try to satisfy the Indians? What tone was taken by some of the Indians north of the Ohio? What was done by Congress? Give an account of Harmer's expedition. 5. Who was next sent against the Indians? Who was the leading spirit of the Indians? Describe Little Turtle. What plan did he lay? Give an account of St. Clair's defeat. 6. Who was intrusted with the command of the third expedition? What nick-name had General Wayne gained in the Revolution? Give an account of Wayne's movements. What was the result? What is Wayne said to have told the Indians? 7. How many terms was Washington President? How many years? What is said of the opposition to the President? 8. By what was Washington troubled, early in his second term? Give an account of the Whiskey Rebellion. 9. What other troubles arose? How did Washington meet them all? What did some want him to do? What did others say? What did Washington prudently do? Meanwhile, what was the state of the country? What have, from time to time, been formed?

Lesson XLIV, p. 140.—1. Who succeeded Washington as President? What is said of John Adams? Relate what happened to Mr. Adams when he was going to France as ambassador. 2. What difficulty arose in Adams's term? What occasioned it? What took place in consequence of these outrages? What was the result of one of these actions? 3. Tell the story of Lieutenant Rodgers and his twelve men. 4. Toward the close of 1799, what news plunged the nation in grief? Of what did Washington die? What did he say to his physician? 5. Where did Congress meet in 1800? How is Washington situated? How did the general government obtain the District of Columbia? Describe the District as it was. What changes have taken place in the District and in Washington City? 6. Who succeeded John Adams? What is Jefferson noted for having drawn up? What was one of the most important events during his term? State the circumstances under which Louisiana was bought? How much was given for it? 7. Where do the Barbary States lie? Of whom were they long the home? What led to a war with Tripoli? 8. What befell the Philadelphia? What gallant exploit was performed by Decatur in connection with this vessel? 9. What did the Americans do soon after this? Tell the story about Decatur. What was the result of the war?

Lesson XLV, p. 144.—1. When did Jefferson commence his second term? What is said of Aaron Burr? What is Burr's scheme thought to have been? 2. How did the President put a stop to Burr's movements? How did Burr's trial result? 3. What lay west of the Rocky Mountains, on the Pacific? What lay north of California? What measures were taken to explore this region? What is said of the exploring party? 4. By what was Jefferson's second term distinguished? By whom was the first steamboat constructed? Where did it ply? How did its speed compare with that of the river sloops? For what did this little boat of Fulton's lead the way? 5. What arrogant claim did Great Britain make and act upon, to the injury of American commerce? 6. Give an account of the outrage committed on the Chesapeake. What took place between the Little Belt and the President? 7. In the midst of the excitement, who became President? How long did Madison serve? By what was his administration signalized? 8. What troubles assumed a threatening aspect in the west? Who was at the head of the Indians? What is said of Tecumseh? Of his brother? What did they do? 9. Where did the prophet fix his head-quarters?

Lesson XLVI, p. 147.—1. Who was governor of the territory of Indiana at this time? How did Tecumseh think he would commence the war? How did Harrison defeat his treacherous plan? 2. Relate an anecdote illustrative of the pride of Tecumseh. 3. Whom did Tecumseh try to bring over to his plans? How did he succeed? How was this movement defeated? Where is the Tippecanoe River? 4. Who met Harrison at this point? What did the ambassadors say? What took place that very night? 5. Give an account of the battle of Tippecanoe. What made the Indians fight with such desperate courage? 6, 7. What was the issue of the battle? Tell the story illustrative of General Harrison's merciful disposition. 8. What followed these Indian troubles? What position was taken by Clay, Calhoun, and others? Accordingly, what was done? What is this war called, and why?

Lesson XLVII, p. 150.—1. What disadvantage did the United States now labor under? What was the first thing proposed? Who was intrusted with the invasion of Canada? 2. Give an account of Hull's movements. What led him to march back without attacking the fort? What was then done by the British? 3. What took place at Detroit? What did the British gain by this surrender? What afterward became of Hull? 4. What movement was made shortly after this in New York? What was done by the first division of the army? How was their success turned into defeat? 5. What made up for these reverses? 6. By whom was one of the greatest naval victories of the Americans gained? Give an account of the action between the Constitution and the Guerriere. 7. By what other vessels were victories gained? Give an account of the engagement between the Wasp and the Frolic. What prevented the Wasp from securing her prize? 8. What vessel did Decatur now command? What vessel did he capture? What other great victory was won? What was done with the Java? What was first taken out of her? 9. Relate an anecdote about this wheel of the Java.

Lesson XLVIII, p. 153.—1. What had been one great cause of the defeats of the Americans? What spirit was still displayed by Congress? What did some maintain? Who had already taken the field? Who was appointed to command them? 2. What was Harrison's object? What prevented him from accomplishing it? How was the army divided for the winter? What was done by General Winchester? By whom was he attacked? 3. What befell Winchester during the battle? Tell the story about Round Head and Winchester. 4. How were the Americans induced to surrender? How was Proctor's pledge kept? 5. What did Proctor now think? What had Harrison been doing? Who soon appeared before Fort Meigs? Near what river was Fort Meigs? (See map.) What was Harrison's answer, when summoned to surrender? 6. Give an account of the attack. 7. What news was now received? What orders were given by Harrison? What was the result of these movements? How were the prisoners treated? How did the attack on Fort Meigs terminate? 8. What success did the Americans meet with on the ocean in 1813? How did Commodore Porter distinguish himself? What success did Captain Lawrence meet with in the Hornet? What befell him in the Chesapeake? What was his last order as he was carried below?

Lesson XLIX, p. 156.—1. Who invaded Canada from the New York frontier in 1813? On what place did he make a descent? Give an account of the first movements of the Americans. 2. What took place when they were within a short distance of the British barracks? Describe the effects of this explosion. What was done by the Americans who were uninjured. 3. What befell General Pike? Give an account of his dying moments. What were next taken by the Americans? Where did the British retire? 4. Give an account of the descent of the British on Sackett's Harbor? What incident is mentioned in connection with this battle? 5. After leaving Fort Meigs, what place did Proctor attack? Who commanded Fort Stephenson? What was Proctor's summons to surrender, and how did Croghan answer it? 6. Give an account of the attack and defence of this post. What was the result? 7. In the summer of 1813, who was sent to Lake Erie? For what purpose? Where did Perry get his vessels? Where were a number of Indians assembled? 8. Give an account of the action. When Perry's flag-ship was disabled, what bold manœuvre did he perform? 9. What movement of Perry's decided the day? What did the British commander do? What is said of the number of prisoners taken? In what part of Lake Erie did this action take place. (See map, p. 155.) 10. How did Perry announce his victory to General Harrison?

Lesson L, p. 159.—1. How did Harrison follow up Perry's victory? What had Proctor and Tecumseh done? Where did Harrison overtake them? How were the British posted? What mistake had Proctor made? How did Harrison avail himself of it? 2. Give an account of the charge of the Kentuckians. What was its effect? Whom did the Kentuckians next charge? How were they received? 3. Give an account of the fall of Tecumseh. What followed? What took place among the Creeks in the summer of 1813? What

did the settlers in Alabama do? How did Wetherford commence the war? 5. What measures were taken to avenge this massacre? Who reached the ground first? By whom were the Tennesseeans commanded? What success did they have? 6. From what did Jackson's men begin to suffer? What did this lead them to do? How did Jackson quell the mutiny? 7. Give an account of the defeat of the Creeks on their *beloved ground*. When and how did Jackson put an end to the war? 8. What took place immediately after this battle? What passed between Wetherford and Jackson? What was the result? 9. Relate the incident connected with the Indian baby. 10. Tell the story about Jackson and the British officer.

Lesson LI, p. 163.—1. Under whom, and when, did the Americans begin to be successful in Canada? Give an account of General Brown's movements. 2. What is said of the battle of Bridgewater? Who distinguished themselves in this battle? What is related of Colonel Miller? 3. What place was attacked by the British in September, 1814? What measures were taken for the defence of Plattsburg? What boast had been made by Commodore Downie? What was the result of the battle? 4. Where did a British fleet appear in the summer of 1814? Whom did this fleet contain? Give an account of the descent on Washington. 5. What city did Ross next propose to ravage? How was Baltimore defended? What befell General Ross? How did the attack terminate? 6. What unpleasant news did the people of New Orleans receive? What were some for doing? Who appeared among them at this time? What measures were taken by Jackson? By whom was Jackson supported? 7. Where did Jackson intrench himself? What is said of the cannonading? On the 8th of January, 1815, what was done by the British? 8. Describe the attempt of the British to storm Jackson's works. What was the issue of the battle? What was the American loss? 9. Tell how Jackson made one of the citizens a soldier in spite of himself? Tell the story about his being fined. 10. How and when was the war with Great Britain terminated? How was the news received?

Lesson LII, p. 168.—1. Who became President, March 4th, 1817? What were commenced during his term of office? What great work was completed in 1825? What does the Erie Canal connect? What is said of its effects? 2. What war broke out soon after Monroe became President? Where did the Seminoles live? By whom were they set on? Where did they begin their depredations? Who was sent against them? What was done by Jackson? 3. Soon after this, what purchase was made by the United States? What was now the condition of the country? How many states were admitted under Monroe? What is said of American commerce? By whom were the haunts of the pirates broken up? 4. How was the summer of 1824 signalized? Give an account of La Fayette's visit. 5. When did Monroe's second term expire? By whom was he succeeded? 6. What took place, July 4th, 1826? What were the last words of Adams? Of Jefferson? 7. What were favorite measures with President Adams? Of what else was he in favor? What was the argument for a high tariff? What was the argument against it?

Lesson LIII, p. 170.—1. Who succeeded Monroe? How many terms did Jackson serve? Between what years? 2. What is said of the Northwest? To what dangers were emigrants exposed? What occasioned difficulties with the Indians? 3. Where did a case of this kind occur? What chief was the leading spirit there? What became of Black Hawk? What was the consequence? What befell a body of troops sent out to take part in this war? 4. Give an account of the tariff difficulties that arose in 1832. How were they settled? 5. What did Jackson do in connection with the United States Bank? What was the consequence? How did he act towards foreign governments? What nations were compelled to make reparation? 6. What difficulties arose with the Seminoles? Describe the warfare carried on by the Indians. 7. Who was sent against the Seminoles? In 1838, what was found necessary? What followed? What were the Seminoles obliged to do? What course have they pursued since that time?

Lesson LIV, p. 173.—1. Who succeeded Jackson? At what date? 2. What were the chief events of Van Buren's term? Give an account of the Canadian difficulty. How was war averted? 3. Who was next raised to the presidency? What melancholy event soon after took place? By whom were the duties of the office then performed? How did Tyler make many enemies? 4. What troublesome question was settled during Tyler's term? By what statesman was this question settled? 5. Give an account of the exploring expedition which returned in 1842. 6. When was the magnetic telegraph first brought into practical operation? Who was its inventor? How had Morse been aided by Congress? Where was the first line established? How did this line work? 7. What was one of the last acts of Congress during Tyler's term? What is said of the previous history of Texas? How often had Texas applied for admission? When was she admitted?

Lesson LV, p. 175.—1. Who became President, March 4th, 1845? What followed the admission of Texas into the Union? What orders were given to General Taylor? What did Taylor do? 2. Give an account of the first two battles of the war, and the movements that led to them. What had been going on at the fort? 3. What was the next step in Taylor's campaign? What is said of the number of volunteers? Where did Taylor first meet with resistance? How was Monterey taken? Where was the next battle fought? What passed between Santa Anna and Taylor before the battle? 4. What is said of the engagement at Buena Vista? What did General Taylor tell Captain Bragg? What was found the next morning? 5. What anecdote is related of General Taylor? 6. To whom was the chief command in the war now intrusted? What was planned by General Scott? What place was first taken? How is Vera Cruz situated? (See map.) 7. What did General Scott then proceed to do? What was he obliged to do, on reaching the Cordilleras? What was the result of this engagement? 8. Where did the enemy gather for a final stand? How were they protected? What is said of the behavior of the troops in taking these defences? 9. What took place, September 14th, 1847? What had been going on meanwhile in the northern

part of Mexico? What did the Mexican government now do? State the provisions of the treaty. 10. Give an account of the settlement of a boundary line in the Northwest with Great Britain.

Lesson LVI, p. 179.—1. How were General Taylor's services rewarded? Who was elected Vice-president? 2. What discovery was made in California in 1848? What was the consequence of this discovery? What request was made by the people of California in Taylor's term? 3. What difficulty arose in relation to the admission of California? How was it settled? 4. What sad event took place while the discussion was going on? 5. What expedition set out from the United States in 1850? With what success did it meet? What took place the next year? 6. What other events of interest took place in Fillmore's term? 7. By whom was Fillmore succeeded?

Lesson LVII, p. 181.—1. By what event was the beginning of Pierce's term signalized? 2. What was one of the greatest events of Pierce's term? What is said of Japan and its people? What had been done in the hope of opening a trade with Japan? What was the result? 3. What produced great excitement in Pierce's term? What positions were taken by opposite parties? Which prevailed? Of what did Kansas become the scene? 4. Who was inaugurated, March 4th, 1857? What took place in the fall of that same year? 5. With whom did difficulties now arise? Where did the Mormons live? What had they done? What steps were taken by the government, and what was the result? 6. To what South American state was a strong naval force sent? Why? How did this trouble terminate? 7. Give an account of the attempt of John Brown and his men. 8. What took place in the summer of 1860? How were the Japanese received? What did they take back with them? 9. What other object of interest presented itself about the same time? Where was the Great Eastern built? How long was it? 10. Who was elected President in 1860? What events followed? Who was chosen President of the Confederate States? 11. When did Mr. Lincoln become President? What was then the condition of affairs?

Lesson LVIII, p. 184.—1. What Southern fort was still held by the United States? What was one of Mr. Lincoln's first measures? With what success did the attempt meet? What was the fate of Fort Sumter? 2. What did President Lincoln next do? What states soon after joined the Confederacy? What steps were taken by the Confederates? 3. What city was for a time threatened by the Confederates? To whom was the command of the Federal forces intrusted? With what success did the Federal troops meet in western Virginia? With what, in eastern Virginia? 4. Give an account of the battle of Bull Run. How is Bull Run situated? (See map.) What places between it and Washington? 5. What events took place at this time in Missouri? What advantages, on the other hand, did the Government forces gain on the Atlantic coast? 6. Who took command of the Federal forces after the battle of Bull Run? What took place October 21st? The next month, where did the Federals meet with a reverse? What was the state of things in Kentucky? 7. Give an account of the blockade of the Southern coast. How was

it sometimes broken? 8. Who were Mason and Slidell? Give an account of their capture. How was war with Great Britain avoided?

Lesson LIX, p. 187.—1. At the commencement of 1862, how many men had the Confederates in the field? Where was their main body? What was the number of the Federal forces? Early in the year, what advantages were gained in Kentucky? 2. What had Commodore Foote been preparing at Cairo? Who coöperated with this naval force? What forts were captured? How were these posts situated? What was the consequence of these captures? 3. Give an account of the descent on Roanoke Island. What other places in North Carolina were taken? 4. Where was a large Federal fleet stationed? What made its appearance one day? What was done by the ram? 5. What fears were entertained for the next day? How was the rest of the fleet saved? What battle was fought just at this time? With what result? 6. At what place in the Mississippi had the Confederates strong fortifications? Who attempted the capture of this island? What was the result? What did the gun-boats then do? 7. How did General Grant follow up the capture of Forts Henry and Donelson? Where did the enemy attack his army? How is Shiloh situated? (See map.) What was the result of the first day's fighting? What of the second? What did the Confederates do, when followed to Corinth? 8. What fort was taken early in April? What more important success followed?

Lesson LX, p. 190.—1. For what had the army of the Potomac been preparing? When they commenced moving, what did the enemy do? By what route did McClellan propose advancing on Richmond? Accordingly, what did he do? Where did he meet with resistance? At length, how near Richmond did he get? 2. At this point, what did McClellan do? Why was he not reënforced? What took place, May 31st? What was the effect of the swamps on the Federal army? 3. Give an account of McClellan's change of base. 4. What was General Lee's next movement, and its result? 5. What did General Lee next do? What took place, September 14th? How is South Mountain situated? (See map.) 6. What place was captured by Stonewall Jackson? At the junction of what two rivers is Harper's Ferry? (See map.) When was the battle of Antietam fought? With what result? Into what does Antietam Creek empty? What did Lee do after this battle? 7. By whom was McClellan now superseded? Give an account of Burnside's movements at Fredericksburg.

Lesson LXI, p. 193.—1. Relate the movements of the Confederates in Tennessee and Kentucky, towards the close of 1862. 2. What victories were gained by General Rosecrans about this time? Whom was Rosecrans ordered to supersede? What took place, December 31st? What was the result of the battle? 3. What was the daily cost of the war? How was this sum raised? What had the banks done some time before? What was the effect on the value of gold? 4. What memorable proclamation was made by the President, January 1st, 1863? 5. Early in 1863, who was made commander of the army of the Potomac? Give an account of Hooker's forward

movement. How is Chancellorsville situated? What was the result of the battle? 6. After repulsing Hooker, what was Lee's next movement? Give an account of Lee's second invasion. What battle terminated it? What was the result of the battle of Gettysburg? 7. What movements were made by General Grant in Mississippi? How is Vicksburg situated? (See map.) 8. Give an account of the siege of Vicksburg, and its result. 9. What place surrendered four days later? What was the effect of these victories?

Lesson LXII, p. 195.—1. What measure was resorted to in the summer of 1863? What was the consequence? 2. Give an account of the riot in New York city. 3. Relate the history of Morgan's raid. 4. What place on the Atlantic coast did the Confederates attempt to recapture? With what success? What movements were made by the National forces against Charleston? How did they succeed? 5. Give an account of Rosecrans's movements in June. What took place at Chickamauga Creek? Into what does this stream empty? What was the result of the battle? 6. What did Bragg next do? How was the Federal army relieved? Who now superseded Rosecrans? What was done by General Grant? Near what stream is Ringgold? (See map.) What is stated respecting the victory gained by Hooker's men? 7. After leaving Bragg, where did Longstreet's division go? For what purpose? What was the result of their attack? How was Knoxville relieved from siege? 8. What was the condition of things in Missouri and Arkansas?

Lesson LXIII, p. 198.—1. Early in 1864, what was done by General Banks? With what success did he meet at first? What took place, April 8th? 2. Narrate the events of the following day. What difficulties did the fleet encounter? 3. What other advantages were gained by the Confederates? What became of the ram Albemarle? 4. To what rank was General Grant raised, March 3d? What did he do with the army at Chattanooga? Where did he hasten? 5. Describe Sherman's movements. How did he finally succeed in taking Atlanta? 6. What route did Grant take in his advance on Richmond? Give an account of his movements. What place did he attempt to take? How was he prevented from taking it? 7. On what place were two unsuccessful attempts made? Give the history of the third invasion of Maryland. 8. With what success did the Federal column that pursued Early meet? Who finally secured the Shenandoah Valley to the Union? 9. Tell how Sheridan once saved a lost battle. What was Early at last obliged to do?

Lesson LXIV, p. 201.—1. By what event was the summer of 1864 signalized? How was the Alabama destroyed? What other privateers were captured? 2. What was done at Petersburg by Grant's army? What other movements were made? 3. When and where did Admiral Farragut distinguish himself? How was Mobile Bay defended? Relate Farragut's achievements. 4. In the fall of 1864, who were elected President and Vice-president? 5. After taking Atlanta, how long a rest did Sherman allow his army? What did he then do? Within a month what was effected? What were the Confederates obliged to do? 6. Give an account of Hood's invasion

of Tennessee. How was it terminated? Where did Hood lead the remnants of his army? 7. What place was a great resort of blockade-runners? How was it defended? What attempt was made in December, 1864? Who repeated the attempt? With what success? 8. Towards the close of 1864, what schemes were set on foot in Canada? Mention some of these that were put in execution.

Lesson LXV, p. 204.—1. What were the next movements made by Sherman's army? What places in North Carolina did they occupy? 2. What was done by the Confederate commander in Charleston? What forced him to this course? How long had the bombardment of Charleston lasted? 3. What movement was made by Sheridan at this time? 4. What desperate attempt was made by the Confederates, March 25th? With what success did they meet? What did General Grant do in turn? 5. What movement was made by the Federals, April 2d? What was the result? 6. What place did Lee's army try to reach? How were they prevented from so doing? What was the consequence? What other successes were gained by the National arms? 7. Give an account of President Lincoln's assassination, and the feeling it excited. The same night, what other attempt was made? With what result? 8. What was the fate of the murderer and his accomplices?

Lesson LXVI, p. 206.—1. Who succeeded President Lincoln? What facts are stated respecting Johnson's previous career? 2. What was the effect of Lee's surrender? What other surrenders followed? Give an account of the capture of Jefferson Davis. 3. What was done by government on the close of the war? How great a debt had been incurred? What was the substance of the President's proclamation of May 29th, 1865? What feeling prevailed in the South? 4. What institution was abolished in 1865? How was this effected? 5. Who were the Fenians? Give an account of their invasion of Canada. How was the movement stopped? 6. What question produced great excitement in 1866 and 1867? On what did Congress insist? What was the result of the discussion? 7. What purchase was made in 1867? Describe Russian America. 8. Give an account of the impeachment of President Johnson. 9. Whom did the republicans nominate for President and Vice-president in 1868? Whom did the democrats nominate? Which candidates were elected? When was General Grant inaugurated?

Lesson LXVII, p. 209.—1. Give some particulars of President Grant's early life. 2. How did the President and Congress agree? How was the Constitution amended? What was done in the case of the seceded states not yet readmitted? 3. What great work was completed in May, 1869? What did the Pacific Railroad connect? What is said of the undertaking? 4. What important treaty was made in 1871? What were the "Alabama claims"? How was the question disposed of? 5. What destructive catastrophes occurred in 1871 and 1872? 6. Who were chosen President and Vice-president in 1872? Who ran against Grant for the presidency? 7. What was the "Credit Mobilier"? Give an account of the Crédit Mobilier scandal. 8. What Indians gave trouble early in Grant's second term? Where did

the Modocs live? What was the cause of the difficulty? What treacherous act did the Modocs commit? What was the result? 9. Give an account of the Louisiana troubles. 10. Mention the principal remaining events of Grant's administration. Give the history of the difficulty with Spain. 11. How was the Centennial year, 1876, celebrated? Give an account of the Great Exhibition. 12. Who were nominated for the presidency and vice-presidency in 1876? What made the election exciting? How were the questions at issue settled? Who were declared elected? When did the inauguration take place?

Lesson LXVIII, p. 213.—1. Give some particulars of the life of President Hayes. 2. What first required the President's attention? What was the condition of affairs in these states? What course did the President pursue? What was the result? 3. Give an account of the great railroad strike in 1877. 4. What is meant by the resumption of specie payments? When did it take place? What action had Congress previously taken in relation to silver? 5. When and how did difficulties with the Utes arise? What took place in consequence? 6. How was the large immigration of Chinese regarded in California, and why? How was the difficulty met? 7. Who were candidates at the presidential election of 1880? What was the result of the election? What happened on July 2d? On September 19th? 8. Give a short sketch of General Garfield's life.

Lesson LXIX, p. 215.—1. What can you say of President Arthur? 2. How was Chinese immigration limited in April, 1882? 3. What is the law as regards bigamy and polygamy? 4. Give the substance of the President's message. 5. What are the provisions of the Civil Service Reform Bill? 6. For what does the Presidential Succession Bill provide?

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE,

PASSED JULY 4, 1776.

A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America, in Congress assembled.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these, are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his Governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment, for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries,

so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments:

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the World for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may

of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

[The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members :]

JOHN HANCOCK.

New Hampshire. — JOSIAH BARTLETT, WILLIAM WHIPPLE, MATTHEW THORNTON.

Massachusetts Bay.—SAMUEL ADAMS, JOHN ADAMS, ROBERT TREAT PAINE, ELBRIDGE GERRY.

Rhode Island.—STEPHEN HOPKINS, WILLIAM ELLERY.

Connecticut.—ROGER SHERMAN, SAMUEL HUNTINGTON, WILLIAM WILLIAMS, OLIVER WOLCOTT.

New York.—WILLIAM FLOYD, PHILIP LIVINGSTON, FRANCIS LEWIS, LEWIS MORRIS.

New Jersey.—RICHARD STOCKTON, JOHN WITHERSPOON, FRANCIS HOPKINSON, JOHN HART, ABRAHAM CLARK.

Pennsylvania.—ROBERT MORRIS, BENJAMIN RUSH, BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, JOHN MORTON, GEORGE CLYMER, JAMES SMITH, GEORGE TAYLOR, JAMES WILSON, GEORGE ROSS.

Delaware.—CÆSAR RODNEY, GEORGE READ, THOMAS M'KEAN.

Maryland. — SAMUEL CHASE, WILLIAM PACA, THOMAS STONE, CHARLES CARROLL, of Carrollton.

Virginia.—GEORGE WYTHE, RICHARD HENRY LEE, THOMAS JEFFERSON, BENJAMIN HARRISON, THOMAS NELSON, JUN., FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE, CARTER BRAXTON.

North Carolina.—WILLIAM HOOPER, JOSEPH HEWES, JOHN PENN.

South Carolina.—EDWARD RUTLEDGE, THOMAS HEYWARD, JUN., THOMAS LYNCH, JUN., ARTHUR MIDDLETON.

Georgia.—BUTTON GWINNETT, LYMAN HALL, GEORGE WALTON.

CONSTITUTION

OF THE

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.*

We the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE. I.

Section. 1. All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

Section. 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.

No Person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age of twenty five Years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other Persons. The actual Enumeration shall be made within three Years after the first Meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, but each State shall have at Least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to chuse three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode-

* In punctuation, spelling, capitals, etc., this is an exact copy of the original document.

Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New-York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

When vacancies happen in the Representation from any State, the Executive Authority thereof shall issue Writs of Election to fill such Vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall chuse their Speaker and other Officers; and shall have the sole Power of Impeachment.

SECTION. 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Expiration of the second Year, of the second Class at the Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third Class at the Expiration of the sixth Year, so that one-third may be chosen every second Year; and if Vacancies happen by Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies.

No Person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty Years, and been nine Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall chuse their other Officers, and also a President pro tempore in the Absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all Impeachments. When sitting for that Purpose, they shall be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside: And no Person shall be convicted without the Concurrence of two thirds of the Members present.

Judgment in Cases of Impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from Office, and Disqualification to hold and enjoy any Office of Honour, Trust or Profit under the United States: but the Party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to Indictment, Trial, Judgment and Punishment, according to Law.

SECTION. 4. The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the places of chusing Senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.

Section. 5. Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller Number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behaviour, and, with the Concurrence of two thirds, expel a Member.

Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the Desire of one fifth of those Present, be entered on the Journal.

Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

Section. 6. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a Compensation for their Services, to be ascertained by Law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all Cases, except Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, be privileged from Arrest during their Attendance at the Session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any Speech or Debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other Place.

No Senator or Representative shall, during the Time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil Office under the Authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the Emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no Person holding any Office under the United States, shall be a Member of either House during his Continuance in Office.

Section. 7. All Bills for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

Every Bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a Law, be presented to the President of the United States; If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his Objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the Objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such Reconsideration two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the Objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a Law. But in all such Cases the Votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and Nays, and the Names of the Persons voting for and against the Bill shall be entered on the Journal of each House respectively. If any Bill shall not be returned by the President within ten Days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the Same

shall be a law, in like Manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their Adjournment prevent its Return, in which Case it shall not be a Law.

Every Order, Resolution, or Vote to which the Concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of Adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the Same shall take Effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the Rules and Limitations prescribed in the Case of a Bill.

SECTION. 8. The Congress shall have Power

To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow Money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;

To establish an uniform Rule of Naturalization, and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States;

To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures;

To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the Securities and currrent Coin of the United States;

To establish Post Offices and post Roads;

To promote the progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writngs and Discoveries;

To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court;

To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations;

To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water;

To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years;

To provide and maintain a Navy;

To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces;

To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the Discipline prescribed by Congress;

To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such Dis-

trict (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, Dock-Yards, and other needful Buildings;—And

To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.

SECTION. 9. The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a Tax or Duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.

The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.

No Capitation, or other Direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.

No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another: nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.

No Money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expenditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.

No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no Person holding any Office of Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince, or foreign State.

SECTION. 10. No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing it's inspection Laws: and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and Controul of the Congress.

No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in Time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or

Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of Delay.

ARTICLE. II.

Section. 1. The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows:

Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

[* The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by Ballot for two Persons, of whom one at least shall not be an Inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a List of all the Persons voted for, and of the Number of Votes for each; which List they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the Presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the Certificates, and the Votes shall then be counted. The Person having the greatest Number of Votes shall be the President, if such Number be a Majority of the whole Number of Electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such Majority, and have an equal Number of Votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately chuse by Ballot one of them for President; and if no Person have a Majority, then from the five highest on the List the said House shall in like Manner chuse the President. But in chusing the President, the Votes shall be taken by States, the Representation from each State having one Vote; A Quorum for this Purpose shall consist of a Member or Members from two thirds of the States, and a Majority of all the States shall be necessary to a Choice. In every Case, after the Choice of the President, the Person having the greatest Number of Votes of the Electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal Votes, the Senate shall chuse from them by Ballot the Vice President.]

The Congress may determine the Time of Chusing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No Person except a natural born Citizen, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the Office of President; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty five Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.

In Case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Res ignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said Office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation, or Inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what Officer shall then act as Presi-

* This clause within brackets has been superseded and annulled by the 12th Amendment, on page 269.

dent, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services, a Compensation, which shall neither be encreased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation:—

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of "President of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, "protect and defend the Constitution of the United States.

SECTION. 2. The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual Service of the United States; he may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to grant Reprieves and Pardons for Offences against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.

He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law: but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.

SECTION. 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the Time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper; he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall Commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION. 4. The President, Vice President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

ARTICLE. III.

SECTION. 1. The judicial Power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from

time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behavior, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their Services, a Compensation, which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.

SECTION. 2. The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority;—to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers, and Consuls;—to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction;—to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party;—to Controversies between two or more States;—between a State and Citizens of another State; between Citizens of different States,—between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.

In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.

The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

SECTION. 3. Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

The Congress shall have Power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainder of Treason shall work Corruption of Blood, or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attainted.

ARTICLE. IV.

SECTION. 1. Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the public Arts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.

SECTION. 2. The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.

A Person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on Demand of the executive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.

No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.

SECTION. 3. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the Junction of two or more States, or Parts of States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have Power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any Claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION. 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion; and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic Violence.

ARTICLE. V.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the Application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all Intents and Purposes, as Part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other Mode of Ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided that no Amendment which may be made prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any Manner affect the first and fourth Clauses in the Ninth Section of the first Article; and that no State, without its Consent, shall be deprived of its equal Suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE. VI.

All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the Members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial Officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by Oath or Affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious Test shall ever be required as a Qualification to any Office or public Trust under the United States.

ARTICLE. VII.

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the Same,

DONE in Convention by the Unanimous Consent of the States present the Seventeenth Day of September in the Year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and Eighty seven and of the Independence of the United States of America the Twelfth **In Witness** whereof We have hereunto subscribed our Names,

GEO WASHINGTON—
Presidt and deputy from Virginia

New Hampshire.—JOHN LANGDON, NICHOLAS GILMAN.

Massachusetts.—NATHANIEL GORHAM, RUFUS KING.

Connecticut.—WM. SAML. JOHNSON, ROGER SHERMAN.

New York.—ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

New Jersey.—WIL: LIVINGSTON, WM. PATERSON, DAVID BREARLEY, JONA. DAYTON.

Pennsylvania.—B. FRANKLIN, ROBT. MORRIS, THO: FITZSIMONS, JAMES WILSON, THOMAS MIFFLIN, GEO: CLYMER, JARED INGERSOLL, GOUV: MORRIS.

Delaware.—GEO: READ, JOHN DICKINSON, JACO: BROOM, GUNNING BEDFORD, Jun'r, RICHARD BASSETT,

Maryland.—JAMES M'HENRY, DANL. CARROLL, DAN: OF ST. THOS. JENIFER.

Virginia.—JOHN BLAIR, JAMES MADISON, JR.,

North Carolina.—WM. BLOUNT, HU. WILLIAMSON, RICH'D DOBBS SPAIGHT,

South Carolina.—J. RUTLEDGE, CHARLES PINCKNEY, CHARLES COTESWORTH PINCKNEY PIERCE BUTLER.

Georgia.—WILLIAM FEW, ABR. BALDWIN.

Attest: WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

The Constitution was adopted on the 17th September, 1787, by the Convention appointed in pursuance of the resolution of the Congress of the Confederation, of the 21st February, 1787, and was ratified by the Conventions of the several States, as follows, viz.:

By Convention of	Delaware,	on the	7th December,	1787.
" "	Pennsylvania,	"	12th December,	1787.
" "	New Jersey,	"	18th December,	1787.
" "	Georgia,	"	2d January,	1788.
" "	Connecticut,	"	9th January,	1788.
" "	Massachusetts,	"	6th February,	1788.
" "	Maryland,	"	28th April,	1788.
" "	South Carolina,	"	23d May,	1788.
" "	New Hampshire,	"	21st June,	1788.
" "	Virginia,	"	26th June,	1788.
" "	New York,	"	26th July,	1788.
" "	North Carolina,	"	21st November,	1789.
" "	Rhode Island,	"	29th May,	1790.

ARTICLES

IN ADDITION TO, AND AMENDMENT OF,

THE CONSTITUTION

OF THE

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,

Proposed by Congress, and ratified by the Legislatures of the several States, pursuant to the fifth Article of the original Constitution.

(ARTICLE I.)

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or of the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

(ARTICLE II.)

A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

(ARTICLE III.)

No Soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

(ARTICLE IV.)

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

(ARTICLE V.)

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in

time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any Criminal Case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

(ARTICLE VI.)

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have Compulsory process for obtaining Witnesses in his favour, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

(ARTICLE VII.)

In Suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury, shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

(ARTICLE VIII.)

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

(ARTICLE IX.)

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

(ARTICLE X.)

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

(ARTICLE XI.)

The Judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.

(ARTICLE XII.)

The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed

to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—the President of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted;—The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

(ARTICLE XIII.)

SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

(ARTICLE XIV.)

SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECTION 2. Representatives shall be appointed among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed; but when the right to vote at any election for the choice of Electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the Executive and Judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the

male inhabitants of such State (being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States), or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in said State.

SECTION 3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector, or President, or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection, or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof; but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties, for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned: but neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave. But all such debts, obligations, and claims, shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this Article.

(ARTICLE XV.)

SECTION 1. The right of the citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

THE END.

HISTORY.

Quackenbos's American History for Schools. Accompanied with numerous Illustrations and thirty-six Colored Maps.

Quackenbos's Elementary History of the United States. With numerous Illustrations and Maps. 12mo. 260 pages.

Quackenbos's Primary History of the United States. Made Easy and Interesting for Beginners. Handsomely illustrated. Child's quarto. 192 pages.

Quackenbos's School History of the United States. From the Earliest Discoveries to the Present Time. Embracing a Full Account of the Aborigines, Biographical Notices of Distinguished Men, and numerous Maps, Plans of Battle-Fields, and Pictorial Illustrations. 12mo. 536 pages.

Quackenbos's Illustrated School History of the World. From the Earliest Ages to the Present Time. Accompanied with eighteen Colored Maps and numerous Engravings. 12mo. 473 pages.

Child's First History of Rome. By Miss E. M. Sewell. 18mo. 255 pages.

Child's First History of Greece. By Miss E. M. Sewell. 18mo. 358 pages.

A History of Greece. From the Earliest Times to the Present. By T. T. Timayenis. With Maps and Illustrations. 2 vols. 12mo.

A Class-Book History of England. Illustrated with numerous Woodcuts and Historical Maps. By the Rev. David Morris, B. A. 12mo. 533 pages.

Markham's History of England. From the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Victoria. Revised by Eliza Robbins. 12mo. 387 pages.

[SEE NEXT PAGE.]

Kohlrausch's History of Germany. From the Earliest Period to the Present Time. 8vo. 487 pages.

Arnold's History of Rome. By THOMAS ARNOLD, D. D. Three volumes in one. 8vo. 670 pages.

Arnold's Lectures on Modern History. With a Preface and Notes, by HENRY REED, M. A., Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania. Large 12mo. 428 pages.

Greene's History of the Middle Ages. 12mo. 450 pages.

Yonge's Three Centuries of Modern History. Large 12mo.

Taylor's Manual of Ancient History. Containing the Political History, Geographical Position, and Social State of the Principal Nations of Antiquity, and illustrated by the Discoveries of Modern Scholars and Travelers. 8vo. 358 pages.

Taylor's Manual of Modern History. Containing the Rise and Progress of the Principal European Nations, their Political History, and the Changes in their Social Condition; with a History of the Colonies founded by Europeans. 8vo. 312 pages.

Taylor's Manual of Ancient and Modern History. The two foregoing volumes in one. 8vo. 670 pages.

Guizot's History of Civilization in Europe. From the Fall of the Roman Empire to the French Revolution. 12mo. 316 pages.

Mangnall's Historical and Miscellaneous Questions. From the eighty-fourth London edition. With large Additions, embracing the Elements of Mythology, Astronomy, Architecture, Heraldry, etc., by Mrs. JULIA LAWRENCE. Fifth American edition, with a Chapter on the American Constitution. 12mo. 396 pages.

[SEE NEXT PAGE.]

Willard's General History, from B. C. 800 to A. D. 1876. Outlined in Diagrams and Tables; with Index and Genealogies. 8vo.

The World in the Middle Ages. An Historical Geography. With Accounts of the Origin and Development, the Institutions and Literature, the Manners and Customs, of the Nations in Europe, Western Asia, and Northern Africa, from the Close of the Fourth to the Middle of the Fifteenth Century. By ADOLPHUS KŒPPEN, Professor of History, Greek, and German Literature in Franklin and Marshall College. 2 vols. 12mo. 850 pages.

Putz's Ancient Geography and History. 12mo. 396 pages.

Putz's Mediæval Geography and History. 12mo. 211 pages.

Putz's Modern Geography and History. 12mo. 336 pages.

Dew's Digest of the Laws, Customs, Manners, and Institutions of the Ancient and Modern Nations. 8vo. 662 pages.

Schmidt's Course of Ancient Geography. 12mo. 328 pages.

A History of Germany: From the Earliest Period to the Establishment of the German Empire in 1871. With 112 Illustrations and 6 Historical Maps. By BAYARD TAYLOR. 12mo. 608 pages.

History Primers. Edited by J. R. GREEN, M. A., Examiner in the School of Modern History at Oxford.

GREECE. ..... C. A. FYFFE.
ROME ..... M. CREIGHTON.
EUROPE ..... E. A. FREEMAN.
FRANCE ..... CHARLOTTE M. YONGE.
OLD GREEK LIFE ..... J. P. MAHAFFY.
ROMAN ANTIQUITIES ..... A. S. WILKINS.
GEOGRAPHY ..... GEORGE GROVE.
MEDIÆVAL CIVILIZATION ..... G. B. ADAMS.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,
NEW YORK, BOSTON, CHICAGO, SAN FRANCISCO.

Quackenbos's Educational Works.

PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. Upon the Basis of the Works of George R. Perkins, LL. D. 1 vol., 18mo. Price, 22 cents.

ELEMENTARY ARITHMETIC. Upon the Basis of the Works of George R. Perkins, LL. D. 1 vol., 12mo. Price, 40 cents.

PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC. Upon the Basis of the Works of George R. Perkins, LL. D. 1 vol., 12mo. Price, 80 cents. Key to do. Price, 18 cents.

MENTAL ARITHMETIC. 1 vol., 18mo. Price, 35 cents.

HIGHER ARITHMETIC. 1 vol., 12mo. Price, $1.10. Key. Price, 65 cents.

FIRST LESSONS IN ENGLISH COMPOSITION. 12mo. Price, 80 cents.

ADVANCED COURSE OF COMPOSITION AND RHETORIC. 12mo. Price, $1.30.

PRIMARY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES; made easy and interesting for Beginners. Child's 4to. 200 pages. (Old edition.) Price, 80 cents.

ELEMENTARY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. With numerous Illustrations and Maps. (New edition.) Price, 65 cents.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, for Schools. Illustrated. 1 vol., 12mo. Price, $1.30.

AMERICAN HISTORY, for Schools. Price, $1.25.

PRIMARY GRAMMAR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. 18mo. Price, 45 cents.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 12mo. Price, 80 cents.

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, embracing the most Recent Discoveries. 12mo. Price, $1.50.

ILLUSTRATED LESSONS IN OUR LANGUAGE; or, How to Speak and Write Correctly. 1 vol., 12mo. Cloth. Price, 55 cents.

ILLUSTRATED SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE WORLD, from the Earliest Ages to the Present Time. Accompanied with numerous Maps and Engravings. By John D. Quackenbos, A. M., M. D. 1 vol., 12mo. Half bound. Price, $1.50.

New York: D. APPLETON & CO., 1, 3, and 5 Bond Street.